

PROJECT MANUAL  
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**Covina District Wide ES HVAC  
Replacement**

Covina, California

Barranca Elementary School – 03-122224  
Ben Lomond Elementary School – 03-122228  
Cypress Elementary School – 03-122230  
Grovecenter Elementary School – 03-122225  
Manzanita Elementary School – 03-122231  
Mesa Elementary School – 03-122232  
Merwin Elementary School – 03-122235  
Rowland Elementary School – 03-122233  
Workman Elementary School – 03-122234

Covina Valley Unified School District

Covina, CA 91723

100% Construction Documents

Prepared by

 **DLR Group**

Architecture  
Engineering  
Planning  
Interiors

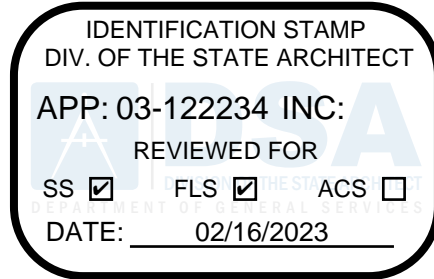
1650 Spruce Street, Suite 300  
Riverside California 92507  
T: 951.682.0457

DLR Group Project No. 75-22605-00

**NOTICE:** These documents are instruments of professional service, and information contained therein is incomplete unless used in conjunction with DLR Group's interpretations, decisions, observations and administrations. Use or reproduction of these documents in whole or in part without DLR Group's consent is in violation of common law, copyrights, statutory and other reserved rights, which preempts state and local public records act.



**Architect**



**Mechanical / Plumbing**



**Structural**



**Electrical**



**DIVISION 00 - TABLE OF CONTENTS**

00 01 02	Professional Signatures
00 01 10	Table of Contents

**DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 10 00	Summary
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 45 29	Testing Lab Services
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
01 91 13	General Commissioning Requirements

**DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 41 19	Selective Demolition
----------	----------------------

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 20 00	Concrete Reinforcing
03 30 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

05 12 00	Structural Steel Framing
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications
05 52 13	Pipe and Tube Railings

**DIVISION 06 – WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
----------	-----------------

**DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 01 50.72	Rehabilitation of Built-up roofing
07 62 00	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
07 72 00	Roof Accessories
07 84 13	Penetration Firestopping
07 92 00	Joint Sealants

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

08 80 00 Glazing

**DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

09 24 00 Cement Plastering  
09 51 13 Acoustical Panel Ceilings  
09 91 13 Exterior Painting  
09 91 23 Interior Painting

**DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

23 05 00 Common Work Results for HVAC  
23 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC piping  
23 05 29 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment  
23 05 48 Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment  
23 05 53 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment  
23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting And Balancing For HVAC  
23 07 13 Duct Insulation  
23 09 23 Building Management and Control Systems  
23 23 00 Refrigerant Piping  
23 31 13 Metal Ducts  
23 33 00 Air Duct Accessories  
23 33 46 Flexible Ducts  
23 37 13 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles  
23 74 16.11 Packaged, small capacity rooftop air conditioning units  
23 74 16.13 Packaged, rooftop air conditioning units  
23 81 27 variable refrigerant flow systems

**DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

26 05 00 Common Work Results for Electrical  
26 05 19 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables  
26 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems  
26 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems  
26 05 33 Raceways and Boxes  
26 05 48.16 Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems  
26 05 53 Identification for electrical systems  
26 24 16 Panelboards  
26 27 26 Wiring Devices  
26 28 13 Fuses  
26 28 16 Disconnect Switches

**DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 12 16 Asphalt Paving  
32 13 13 Concrete Paving

**END TABLE OF CONTENTS**

## SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Phased construction.
4. Owner-furnished products.
5. Contractor-furnished, Owner-installed products.
6. Access to site.
7. Work restrictions.
8. Specification and Drawing conventions.
9. Miscellaneous provisions.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

#### 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Covina Valley Elementary School HVAC Modernization

1. Project Location: Barranca Elementary School – 727 S. Barranca Ave, Covina, CA 91723
2. Project Location: Ben Lomond Elementary School – 621 E. Covina Blvd., Covina, CA 91722
3. Project Location: Cypress Elementary School – 351 Cypress St., Covina, CA 91723
4. Project Location: Grovecenter Elementary School – 775 N. Lark Ellen Ave., West Covina, CA 91791
5. Project Location: Manzanita Elementary School – 4131 N. Nora Ave., Covina, CA 91722
6. Project Location: Merwin Elementary School – 16125 Cypress St. Covina, CA 91722
7. Project Location: Mesa Elementary School – 409 S. Barranca Ave., West Covina, CA 91791

8. Project Location: Rowland Elementary School – 1355 E. Rowland Ave., West Covina, CA 91790

9. Project Location: Workman Elementary School – 1941 E. Workman Ave., West Covina, CA 91791

B. Owner: Covina Valley Unified School District.

C. Architect: DLR Group.

D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

1. Electrical / Fire Alarm Engineer: DLR Group

2. Structural Engineer: DLR Group

3. Mechanical Engineer: DLR Group

#### 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents.

B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compliance to Regulatory Requirements:

1. California Building Standards Code (California Code of Regulations, - Title 24), Parts 1-6 and 9.

2. Copies of Title 24. Parts 1-5 shall be kept available on-site during construction.

3. When conflicts or inconsistencies exist between the specifications and the drawings including the general notes, the more stringent requirements shall take precedence.

4. All Addenda must be signed by the Architect and approved by DSA (Section 4-338. Part1).

5. All substitutions affecting DSA regulated items shall be considered a Construction Change Document (CCD) or Addenda and shall be approved by DSA prior to fabrication and installation. (IR A-6 and Section 4-338(c), Part 1).

#### 1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes receiving, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products and making building services connections.

B. Owner-Furnished Products:

1. As indicated on drawings.

1.7 CONTRACTOR-FURNISHED, OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Contractor shall furnish products indicated. The Work includes unloading, handling, storing, and protecting Contractor-furnished products as directed and turning them over to Owner at Project closeout.

B. Contractor-Furnished, Owner-Installed Products:

1. As indicated on drawings.

1.8 ACCESS TO SITE

A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

B. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing buildings to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. The District's school calendar is posted on the District's website and is updated periodically.

1. Work outside regular hours: Work outside regular working hours requires owner approval and is subject to the following restrictions:
  - a. Weekend Hours: Comply with applicable city ordinances.
  - b. Work after dark: Obtain approval from owner's representative for location of any lights that are used outside.

C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.

- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Restricted Substances: Use of controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
  - 1. Smoking is not permitted within the building(s) or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.
- F. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Always require personnel to use identification tags.
- G. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
  - 1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

#### 1.10 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations and scheduled on Drawings.
  - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

#### 1.11 INDEMNIFICATION

- A. Any contractor using these drawings or using these specifications agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Architect from any claim, demand, lawsuit, cost, fees (including attorney feed), and/or liability arising from or related to the use of these drawings or specifications or the construction of the project depicted or described therein.



Covina Valley USD District Wide ES HVAC Replacement  
Covina Valley Unified School District  
Covina, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22605-00  
100% Construction Documents

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

## SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size,

- durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Contractor agrees to compensate Architect, at Architect's current billing rates, for substitution requests that require modification to the contract documents. Compensation shall be made by an adjustment to the contract amount.
- a. Where required by Division of the State Architect (DSA) approvals, the Contractor shall pay all plan check fees. Or fees required to obtain approval.
  - b. The Contractor shall pay the Architect and his Consultants for all services rendered for the drawings, calculations, review time, and/or DSA plan check time for each substituted item(s) for approval.
4. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within a reasonable period after the Architect receives final documentation.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Substitutions may be considered when a product becomes unavailable through no fault of the Contractor. Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 30 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- B. Substitutions for Convenience: **Requests are restricted to before bid opening.**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

## SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.4 AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

- A. All addenda must be signed by the Architect and approved by DSA (Section 4-338, Part 1)

#### 1.5 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 10 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.

- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Construction Manager.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Construction Manager will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Construction Manager may issue a Work Change Directive on EJCDC Document C-940. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

Covina Valley USD District Wide ES HVAC Replacement  
Covina Valley Unified School District  
Covina, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22605-00  
100% Construction Documents

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

## SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect through Construction Manager at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
  - 4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one-line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:



- a. Project name and location.
  - b. Name of Architect.
  - c. Architect's Project number.
  - d. Contractor's name and address.
  - e. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
- a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
- a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
6. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate Owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
7. Overhead Costs: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
8. Overhead Costs: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
9. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
10. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms acceptable to Owner for Applications for Payment. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Construction Manager will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. Schedule of values.

3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  6. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
  7. Schedule of unit prices.
  8. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  9. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  10. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  11. Copies of building permits.
  12. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  13. Initial progress report.
  14. Report of preconstruction conference.
  15. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  16. Performance and payment bonds.
  17. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, apply for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- I. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706.
  5. AIA Document G706A.
  6. AIA Document G707.
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

## SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:

1. General coordination procedures.
2. Coordination drawings.
3. RFIs.
4. Digital project management procedures.
5. Project meetings.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.
4. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for coordinating the Work with Owner's Commissioning Authority.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Title 24 Part 1-5 must be kept on site during construction.

#### 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- C. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the work. See other sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
    - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
    - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
    - f. Indicate required installation sequences.

- g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
  1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes dimensioned from column center lines.
  8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
  9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in enough scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
  10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."

- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  2. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version AutoCAD 2016, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
  3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in Revit 2016 and AutoCAD 2016.
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

#### 1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's and Construction Manager's Action: Architect and Construction Manager will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect or Construction Manager of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Construction Manager in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Software log with not less than the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect and Construction Manager.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's and Construction Manager's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's and Construction Manager's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect and Construction Manager within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.



## 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project record Drawings.
  2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
  3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2016.
  4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
    - a. Subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.
  5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
    - a. Floor plans.
    - b. Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Web-Based Project Software: Use Owner's or Construction Manager's web-based Project software site for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
1. Web-based Project software site includes, at a minimum, the following features:
    - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
    - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
    - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
    - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
    - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
    - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
    - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
    - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
    - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
    - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
    - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
    - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, DSA, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Sustainable design requirements.
    - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - p. Use of the premises and existing building.
    - q. Work restrictions.
    - r. Working hours.
    - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - x. Parking availability.

- y. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - aa. First aid.
    - bb. Security.
    - cc. Progress cleaning.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
  1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Sustainable design requirements.
    - i. Review of mockups.
    - j. Possible conflicts.
    - k. Compatibility requirements.
    - l. Time schedules.
    - m. Weather limitations.
    - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - o. Warranty requirements.
    - p. Compatibility of materials.
    - q. Acceptability of substrates.
    - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - s. Space and access limitations.
    - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - v. Installation procedures.
    - w. Coordination with other work.
    - x. Required performance results.
    - y. Protection of adjacent work.
    - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
  3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

- D. Project Closeout Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, DSA, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
    - f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - h. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - k. Submittal procedures.
    - l. Coordination of separate contracts.
    - m. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - n. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - o. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority], Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.

- b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
  - 4) Status of submittals.
  - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
  - 6) Deliveries.
  - 7) Off-site fabrication.
  - 8) Access.
  - 9) Site use.
  - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 11) Progress cleaning.
  - 12) Quality and work standards.
  - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 14) Field observations.
  - 15) Status of RFIs.
  - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
  - 17) Pending changes.
  - 18) Status of Change Orders.
  - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
  - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority], Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.

- c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
  - 4) Status of submittals.
  - 5) Deliveries.
  - 6) Off-site fabrication.
  - 7) Access.
  - 8) Site use.
  - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 10) Work hours.
  - 11) Hazards and risks.
  - 12) Progress cleaning.
  - 13) Quality and work standards.
  - 14) Status of RFIs.
  - 15) Proposal Requests.
  - 16) Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending changes.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

## SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Material location reports.
  - 6. Site condition reports.
  - 7. Unusual event reports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:

1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.

B. Startup construction schedule.

1. Submittal of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.

D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.

1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.

E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

F. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.

G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

H. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

I. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.

B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:



1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
3. Discuss constraints, including work stages and interim milestones.
4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

## 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.
1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for commissioning.
  6. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  7. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
  3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Coordination with existing construction.
    - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    - c. Uninterruptible services.
    - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    - e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
    - f. Provisions for future construction.
    - g. Seasonal variations.
    - h. Environmental control.
  7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.
    - d. Mockups.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Sample testing.
    - g. Deliveries.
    - h. Installation.
    - i. Tests and inspections.
    - j. Adjusting.
    - k. Curing.
    - l. Building flush-out.
    - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
    - n. Commissioning.
  8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
    - a. Structural completion.
    - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
    - c. Permanent space enclosure.
    - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
    - e. Completion of electrical installation.
    - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.

- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
  - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  - 1. Unresolved issues.
  - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
  - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

## 1.8 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

## 1.9 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
  - 1. Develop network diagram in enough time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.
  - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.

4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- C. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- D. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  2. Description of activity.
  3. Main events of activity.
  4. Immediately preceding and succeeding activities.
  5. Early and late start dates.
  6. Early and late finish dates.
  7. Activity duration in workdays.
  8. Total float or slack time.
  9. Average size of workforce.
  10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- E. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with revising schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  2. Changes in early and late start dates.
  3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  5. Changes in the critical path.
  6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- F. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
  4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
    - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

#### 1.10 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  4. Equipment at Project site.
  5. Material deliveries.
  6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  7. Testing and inspection.
  8. Accidents.
  9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  10. Unusual events.
  11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  13. Emergency procedures.
  14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  16. Work Change Directives received and implemented.
  17. Services connected and disconnected.
  18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  19. Partial completions and occupancies.
  20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

## SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
- 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
- 2. Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
- 3. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 4. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
- 5. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
- 6. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
- 7. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
- 8. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and Construction Manager and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's and Construction Manager's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Name of Construction Manager.
  5. Name of Contractor.
  6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
  9. Category and type of submittal.
  10. Submittal purpose and description.
  11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  13. Indication of full or partial submittal.

14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
15. Other necessary identification.
16. Remarks.
17. Signature of transmitter.

- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect and Construction Manager on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project software website.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  1. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect and Construction Manager reserve the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Construction Manager's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Construction Manager will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.



2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Construction Manager, through Architect, before being returned to Contractor.
    - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.

## 1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.

- c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return submittal with options selected.

6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect and Construction Manager will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
  1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

1.8 DEFERRED APPROVALS

- A. Where shown on drawings and as specified in individual sections, submit documentation as required to obtain DSA approval of all deferred work.
- B. Architect will submit documents to DSA reviewing authority for review and comment. Architect will return documents to Contractor following DSA review.
- C. Where required, Contractor shall make all changes or corrections required by DSA reviewing authority. Contractor shall pay all fees and provide all coordination and management necessary to obtain approval, including all meeting, correspondence and communications. Once corrections are made, Contractor shall return to Architect for resubmittal.
- D. After receiving DSA final approval, Architect will furnish Contractor one complete set of DSA approved documents for Architects use in construction.

- E. Submit deferred approval documentation under the provisions of section 01 33 00 and as specified in the respective Sections.
1. Comply with the requirements of Section 4-3 17(g), Chapter 7, Part 1, title 24, CCR. All deferred approvals shall be stamped and sealed by the responsible engineer, licensed as specified. Architect will review and mark with notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and that they have been found to be in general conformance with the design of the project.
  2. Submit documentation prepared under the supervision of a California licensed Engineer in the applicable discipline. All structural deferred approvals shall be prepared by California licensed Structural Engineer.
  3. Provide Deferred Approval Number and DSA Project Number and File number on the cover of each submittal.
  4. Provide document format with sufficient space for Architect and DSA agency review stamps.
  5. Clearly identify all deviations and proposed alternates to materials and systems shown on drawings and specified in the Project Manual.
  6. Drawings: Produce drawings on substantial bond paper using media of archive quality. Indicate dimensional locations of the various parts of the construction, sizes and type of members, connections, attachments, and openings.
  7. Structural Calculations: Produce calculations in booklet form, 8-112 x 1 1 inch size, minimum of 3 wet signed and sealed copies.
  8. Provide sufficient information with respect to design criteria, analysis methodology and material capacity to adequately evaluate documentation for compliance with applicable sections Title 24, CCR.
  9. Where required by Section 4-336, provide verified reports for work done under deferred approvals.

#### 1.9 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect and Construction Manager.

- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with indication in web-based Project software. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Architect and Construction Manager will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

#### 1.11 ARCHITECT'S AND CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  - 2. Submittals by Web-Based Project Software: Architect and Construction Manager will indicate, on Project software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect and Construction Manager will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect and Construction Manager will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

## SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to

verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
  2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
  3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.
- 1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES
- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are not enough to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.



## 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements:** If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction before proceeding.
- B. **Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels:** The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. **Shop Drawings:** For integrated exterior mockups.
  - 1. Include plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. **Delegated-Design Services Submittal:** In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. **Contractor's Quality-Control Plan:** For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. **Qualification Data:** For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. **Contractor's Statement of Responsibility:** When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. **Schedule of Tests and Inspections:** Prepare in tabular form and include the following:

1. Specification Section number and title.
2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
3. Description of test and inspection.
4. Identification of applicable standards.
5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
6. Number of tests and inspections required.
7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including Subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
  2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
  
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems like those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as enough production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products like those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as enough production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.

- b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
      - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
      - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
      - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
      - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
    2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
    1. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or Construction Manager.
    2. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
    4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
    5. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.
      - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
    6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
    7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
  - L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup according to approved Shop Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
  - M. Room Mockups: Construct room mockups according to approved Shop Drawings incorporating required materials and assemblies, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
- 1.11 QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.

1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.
  3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

- F. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. **Associated Contractor Services:** Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. **Coordination:** Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. **Schedule of Tests and Inspections:** Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
  - 1. **Distribution:** Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.12 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. **Special Tests and Inspections:** Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. **Test and Inspection Log:** Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:

1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00



## SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; [www.aamanet.org](http://www.aamanet.org).
3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org)
9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concrete-pipe.org](http://www.concrete-pipe.org).
10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
12. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
15. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; [www.aitc-glulam.org](http://www.aitc-glulam.org).
20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; [www.aosaseed.com](http://www.aosaseed.com).
23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
25. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).
26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).
29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).

32. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).
33. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); [www.asse.org](http://www.asse.org).
34. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
35. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
37. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; [www.awea.org](http://www.awea.org).
38. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
39. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
40. AWPA - American Wood Protection Association; [www.awpa.com](http://www.awpa.com).
41. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
42. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
43. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
44. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
45. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
46. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
47. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
48. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
49. CDA - Copper Development Association; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
50. CE - Conformite Europeenne; <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking/>
51. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; [www.electricity.ca](http://www.electricity.ca).
52. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; [www.ce.org](http://www.ce.org).
53. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
54. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
55. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
56. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
57. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
58. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
59. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
60. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.pbmdf.com](http://www.pbmdf.com).
61. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
62. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
63. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
64. CSA - Canadian Standards Association; [www.csa.ca](http://www.csa.ca).
65. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services); [www.csa-international.org](http://www.csa-international.org).
66. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csinet.org](http://www.csinet.org).
67. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).
68. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); [www.cti.org](http://www.cti.org).
69. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
70. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).
71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.eciaonline.org](http://www.eciaonline.org).
75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
78. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).

82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org).
83. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); [www.fiba.com](http://www.fiba.com).
84. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); [www.fivb.org](http://www.fivb.org).
85. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
87. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarooft.com](http://www.floridarooft.com).
88. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
89. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
90. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
91. GANA - Glass Association of North America; [www.glasswebsite.com](http://www.glasswebsite.com).
92. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
93. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
94. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
95. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
96. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; [www.hpva.org](http://www.hpva.org).
97. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; [www.hpwhite.com](http://www.hpwhite.com).
98. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
99. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
100. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).
101. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
102. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
103. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
104. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; [www.icpa-hq.org](http://www.icpa-hq.org).
105. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
106. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
107. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
108. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
109. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
110. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
111. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; [www.igmaonline.org](http://www.igmaonline.org).
112. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.okstate.edu](http://www.igshpa.okstate.edu).
113. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.iliai.com](http://www.iliai.com).
114. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
115. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
116. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
117. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
118. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
119. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
120. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int/home](http://www.itu.int/home).
121. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
122. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
123. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
124. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
125. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
126. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).
127. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
128. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; [www.mhia.org](http://www.mhia.org).
129. MIA - Marble Institute of America; [www.marble-institute.com](http://www.marble-institute.com).

130. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
131. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
132. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; [www.mss-hq.org](http://www.mss-hq.org).
133. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
134. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).
135. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
136. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.naima.org](http://www.naima.org).
137. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
138. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
139. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
140. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
141. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
142. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
143. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
144. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
145. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
146. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
147. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
148. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
149. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
150. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
151. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
152. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
153. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
154. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
155. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
156. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).
157. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
158. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
159. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
160. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
161. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
162. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
163. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); <http://www.plasa.org>.
164. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
165. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
166. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; [www.redwoodinspection.com](http://www.redwoodinspection.com).
167. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
168. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
169. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
170. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
171. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
172. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
173. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.siaonline.org](http://www.siaonline.org).
174. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
175. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
176. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
177. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
178. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).
179. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).

180. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
181. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
182. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
183. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; [www.sspc.org](http://www.sspc.org).
184. STI - Steel Tank Institute; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
185. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
186. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
187. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
188. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tileusa.com](http://www.tileusa.com).
189. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.tema.org](http://www.tema.org).
190. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
191. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
192. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
193. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
194. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrassod.org](http://www.turfgrassod.org).
195. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; [www.tilerroofing.org](http://www.tilerroofing.org).
196. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; <http://www.ul.com>.
197. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
198. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
199. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
200. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
201. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; [www.wastec.org](http://www.wastec.org).
202. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.wclib.org](http://www.wclib.org).
203. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
204. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
205. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.wicnet.org](http://www.wicnet.org).
206. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
207. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; [www.din.de](http://www.din.de).
2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
3. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).

9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
  11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
  12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
  13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
  14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
  15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
  16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
  17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
  18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
  19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).
- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
  2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
  4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
  5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
    - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
    - b. Available from General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
    - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org/ccb](http://www.wbdg.org/ccb).
  6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
  7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
  8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; [www.bearhfti.ca.gov](http://www.bearhfti.ca.gov).
  2. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; [www.calregs.com](http://www.calregs.com).
  3. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
  4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; [www.cal-iaq.org](http://www.cal-iaq.org).
  5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; [www.cpuc.ca.gov](http://www.cpuc.ca.gov).
  6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov).

7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development;  
[www.txforestservicetamu.edu](http://www.txforestservicetamu.edu).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00



## SECTION 01 45 29 - TESTING LAB SERVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes

1. Selection and payment.
2. Contractor submittals.
3. Laboratory responsibilities.
4. Laboratory reports.
5. Limits on testing laboratory authority
6. Contractor responsibilities.
7. Schedule of inspections and tests.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Title 24, CCR.
- B. ASTM D 3740 - Practice for Evaluation of Agencies in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction.
- C. ASTM E 329 - Recommended Practice for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete, Steel, and Bituminous Materials as Used in Construction.

#### 1.3 SELECTION AND PAYMENT

- A. Owner will employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory, approved by DSA, to perform inspection and testing as specified in this Section.
  1. Unless specified as the Owner's responsibility, all other testing, mix design preparation and related quality control and certification requirements shall be paid by the Contractor at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. All asphalt concrete mix designs shall be prepared at Contractor's cost and in compliance with Section 32 12 16.
- B. Only DSA, local legally constituted public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work, the Architect, and the Owner or their designated representatives shall be authorized to direct testing and inspection to determine compliance or non-compliance to the requirements of the Work.
  1. The Contractor shall reimburse the owner, through Contract adjustment, for inspection and testing costs caused by the following Contractor actions:
    - a. All testing costs incurred after initial test established non-conformance with contract requirements.
    - b. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's scheduling of work requiring inspections of less than 4 hours duration.

- c. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to complete work requiring inspection within the scheduled duration period shown on Contractor's initial construction schedule.
- d. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to order enough or required quantity of material.
- e. Inspection costs of items repaired following damage caused by Contractor.
- f. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's substitution of material, system or process, where such inspection and testing are required by the Architect, Owner or jurisdictional authority to demonstrate compliance with specified criteria.
- g. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's use of batch plant that does not comply with criteria waiving batch plant inspection.
- h. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's use of a supplier or subcontractor requiring inspection services to be performed at a location exceeding a 100-mile radius of project site.
- i. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to complete work within normal hours and days, requiring overtime costs.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Laboratory: Authorized to operate in State in which Project is located, and currently approved by DSA.
- B. Laboratory Staff: Maintain a full-time registered Engineer on staff to review services.
- C. Testing Equipment: Calibrated at reasonable intervals with devices of an accuracy traceable to either National Bureau of Standards (NBS) Standards or accepted values of natural physical constants.
- D. Welding Inspectors shall be certified in accordance with AWS QC1 Standard for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors.

#### 1.5 LABORATORY RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform specified inspection, sampling, and testing of Products in accordance with specified standards.
- B. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Promptly notify Architect of observed irregularities or non - conformance of Work or Products.
- D. Perform special inspections for areas of work as shown on drawings and specified in respective sections of the specifications in compliance with Section 4-333, Part 1, Title 24, CCR.
- E. Perform additional inspections and tests required by Architect.

#### 1.6 LABORATORY REPORTS

- A. After each inspection and test, promptly submit copies of laboratory report to Architect, Structural Engineer, Contractor, Owner, Project Inspector, DSA, and other parties as required by referenced sections and applicable regulations.

- B. Include:
  - 1. Date issued.
  - 2. Project title, project number and DSA Application Number
  - 3. Name of inspector.
  - 4. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
  - 5. Method of obtaining sample.
  - 6. Identification of product and Specifications section.
  - 7. Location in the Project.
  - 8. Type of inspection or test.
  - 9. Date of test.
  - 10. Results of tests.
  - 11. Conformance with Contract Documents.
  - 12. Indicate samples taken but not tested.
- C. When requested by Architect, provide interpretation of test results.
- D. Testing agency shall provide verified reports in compliance with Chapter 4, Part 1, Section 4-336 DSA, of Title 24, CCR.
  - 1. Provide such reports in duplicate, on approved form.
  - 2. Provide reports each time work on the project is suspended and at completion of project.
  - 3. Reports shall document actions taken, tests made, and other aspects of the construction operations for the period prescribed.

#### 1.7 LIMITS-ON TESTING LABORATORY AUTHORITY

- A. Laboratory may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
- B. Laboratory may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
- C. Laboratory may not assume any duties of Contractor.
- D. Laboratory has no authority to stop the Work.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Deliver or make available to laboratory at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used which require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
- B. Do not incorporate material or products requiring compliance with specified testing and inspection criteria without receiving documentation of compliance from approved agency.
- C. Cooperate with laboratory personnel and provide access to the Work and to manufacturer's facilities.
- D. Provide incidental labor and facilities to provide access to Work to be tested, to assist testing laboratory in obtaining and handling samples, to obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested, to facilitate tests and inspections, storage and curing of test samples.
  - 1. Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

2. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities and protect repaired construction.
  3. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection, testing, or similar services.
- E. Contractor shall prepare integrated schedule for the course of construction showing all required inspection and testing. Determine the time required for the laboratory to perform testing and to issue reports and findings. Provide all required testing and inspection time within the construction schedule.
1. Notify Architect, Project Inspector and laboratory minimum two working days prior to expected time for operations requiring inspection and testing services.
  2. Coordinate the sequence of activities to accommodate required services with a minimum of delay. Coordinate activities to avoid the necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate inspections and tests.
- F. Notify the Owner's representative an enough time in advance of the manufacture or material to be supplied by Owner under the Contract Documents, which must by terms of the Contract be tested, in order that the Owner may arrange for testing at the source of supply.

#### 1.9 SCHEDULE OF INSPECTIONS AND TESTS BY OWNER'S TESTING AGENCY

- A. Site Excavation, Fills and Foundation Preparation (Title 24, Part 2)
1. All earthwork, including earth fill compaction - 1705A.6
  2. Inspection of Excavation/fill Installation - 1705A.6
- B. Concrete (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 19A)
1. Materials
    - a. Portland Cement - 1705A.3, 1903A, 1913A. 1
    - b. Concrete Aggregates - 1705A.3, 1903A, 1903A.6.
    - c. Reinforcing Bars - 1705A.3, 1705A.12.1, 1903A.8, 1913A.2
    - d. Admixtures- 1903A
  2. Concrete Quality
    - a. Proportions of Concrete - 1904A, 1905A. 1
    - b. Strength Tests - 1905A. 1.2, 19 13A. 1
  3. Concrete Inspection
    - a. Job Site Inspection - 1705A.3.5
    - b. Batch Plant Inspection - 1705A.3.2
    - c. Waiver of Batch Plant Inspection - 1705A.3.3
    - d. Reinforcing Bar Welding Inspection - 1705A.2.2.1.2
    - e. Post-Installed Anchors in Concrete - 191 3A.7
- C. Masonry (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 21A)
1. Materials

- a. Masonry Units - 2 103A. 1
  - b. Mortar- 2 103A.9
  - c. Grout - 2103A.13
  - d. Reinforcing Bars - 2103A.14
2. Masonry Quality
- a. Portland Cement Tests - 1913A. 1
  - b. Mortar and Grout Tests - 2 105A.2.2.1.4
  - c. Masonry Core Tests - 2 105A.4
  - d. Masonry Prism Tests - 2105A.2.2.2.
  - e. Masonry Unit Tests - 2105A.2.2.1.
3. Masonry Inspection
- a. Reinforced Masonry - 1705A.4
  - b. Reinforcing Bar Welding Inspection - 1704A.2.2.1.2
- D. Structural Steel (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 22A)
1. Materials
- a. Structural Steel - 2205A. 1
  - b. Cold Formed Steel 2210A
  - c. Material Identification - 2203A. 1
2. Structural Steel Quality
- a. High Strength Bolts, Nuts & Washers - 2213A.1
  - b. Tests of Structural & Cold Formed Steel - 1705A.2.2
  - c. Tests of End Welded Studs - 22 13A.2
3. Structural Steel Inspection
- a. Shop Fabrication Inspection - 1704A.2.5
  - b. High Strength Bolt Inspection - 1705A.2.1
  - c. Welding Inspection - 1705A.2.2.1, 1705A.2.2.5
  - d. Nelson Stud Welding - 22 13A.2
- E. Miscellaneous Fasteners
1. Anchorage test methods as shown on drawings and specified in respective sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014529

## SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- C. Erosion and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.
- F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:

1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
4. Waste-handling procedures.
5. Other dust-control measures.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with CEC.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top rails.

#### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of enough size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  2. Conference room of enough size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
  3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.



3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during Project.
  4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- C. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- D. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined enough to accommodate construction operations.
  2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- E. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- F. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
  2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.

4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

## SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 2. Section 01 42 00 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved by Architect through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. If a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select

another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications. Submit a comparable product request, if applicable.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Request Submittal: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Architect's Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.

e. Ratings.

3. See individual identification sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional identification requirements.

## 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Pursuant to 40 Code of Federal Regulations 763.99(a)(7), no asbestos containing materials are allowed in any building material for the project. Contractor to provide certifications that all materials are free from any asbestos-containing building materials.
2. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
3. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
4. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
5. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
7. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

- a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect through Construction Manager in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect; whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following: ..."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

- a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following: ..."
  3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: ..."
  4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, which complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
  5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: ..."
  6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, which complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
  7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
    - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - 1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  - 2. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 3. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 4. Samples, if requested.
- B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00



## SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
6. Progress cleaning.
7. Starting and adjusting.
8. Protection of installed construction.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
4. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting

and patching work. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
  - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
  - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
  - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affecting by cutting and patching operations.
2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor or professional engineer.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor or professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
  3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
  4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
    - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.
- D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- E. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor or professional engineer.
- F. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Membranes and flashings.
    - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
    - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
    - e. Equipment supports.
    - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
    - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, fully use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
1. Description of the Work.
  2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect and Construction Manager promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor or professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect and Construction Manager when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect and Construction Manager.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect or Construction Manager. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect and Construction Manager before proceeding.

2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points enough to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Where possible, select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned

with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
1. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.



1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

## SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Achieve end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 percent by weight of total non-hazardous solid waste generated by the Work. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and

demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:

1. Demolition Waste:

- a. Asphalt paving.
- b. Concrete.
- c. Concrete reinforcing steel.
- d. Brick.
- e. Concrete masonry units.
- f. Wood studs.
- g. Wood joists.
- h. Plywood and oriented strand board.
- i. Wood paneling.
- j. Wood trim.
- k. Structural and miscellaneous steel.
- l. Rough hardware.
- m. Roofing.
- n. Insulation.
- o. Doors and frames.
- p. Door hardware.
- q. Windows.
- r. Glazing.
- s. Metal studs.
- t. Gypsum board.
- u. Acoustical tile and panels.
- v. Carpet.
- w. Carpet pad.
- x. Demountable partitions.
- y. Equipment.
- z. Cabinets.
- aa. Plumbing fixtures.
- bb. Piping.
- cc. Supports and hangers.
- dd. Valves.
- ee. Sprinklers.
- ff. Mechanical equipment.
- gg. Refrigerants.
- hh. Electrical conduit.
- ii. Copper wiring.
- jj. Lighting fixtures.
- kk. Lamps.
- ll. Ballasts.
- mm. Electrical devices.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.

- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
  - 1) Paper.
  - 2) Cardboard.
  - 3) Boxes.
  - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
  - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
  - 6) Wood crates.
  - 7) Plastic pails.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit report. Use Form CWM-7 for construction waste and Form CWM-8 for demolition waste. Include the following information:
  - 1. Material category.
  - 2. Generation point of waste.
  - 3. Total quantity of waste in tons.
  - 4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons.
  - 5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons.
  - 6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons.
  - 7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
- B. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
- C. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- D. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- E. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- F. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

- G. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- H. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of waste management coordinator.
  - 2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
  - 3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
  - 4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
  - 5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

#### 1.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to ASTM E 1609 and requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Distinguish between demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition and construction waste generated by the Work. Use Form CWM-1 for construction waste and Form CWM-2 for demolition waste. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
- C. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Use Form CWM-3 for construction waste and Form CWM-4 for demolition waste. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
  - 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
  - 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.

3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.
- D. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Use Form CWM-5 for construction waste and Form CWM-6 for demolition waste. Include the following:
1. Total quantity of waste.
  2. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  3. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
  4. Revenue from salvaged materials.
  5. Revenue from recycled materials.
  6. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
  7. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
  8. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  9. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.

- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
  - 2. Comply with Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### 3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work: Salvage items for reuse and handle as follows:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
  - 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  - 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Donation: Permitted on Project site.
- C. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use: Salvage items for Owner's use and handle as follows:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  - 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- E. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- F. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- G. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- H. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.

### 3.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner.



- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.
  - 1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
    - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
  - 2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
  - 4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
  - 5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

### 3.4 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Asphalt Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 4-inch size.
- B. Asphalt Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
- C. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
  - 1. Pulverize concrete to maximum 4-inch size.
- D. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
  - 1. Pulverize masonry to maximum 4-inch size.
    - a. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use as mineral mulch.
  - 2. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
- E. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
- F. Metals: Separate metals by type.
  - 1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
  - 2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- G. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.

- H. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
- I. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
- J. Metal Suspension System: Separate metal members including trim, and other metals from acoustical panels and tile and sort with other metals.
- K. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
  - 1. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- L. Carpet Tile: Remove debris, trash, and adhesive.
  - 1. Stack tile on pallet and store clean, dry carpet in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- M. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- N. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

### 3.5 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
  - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
  - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
  - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
  - 4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
  - 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
  - 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location.
  - 1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
- D. Disposal: Remove waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- E. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.7 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Form CWM-1 for construction waste identification.
- B. Form CWM-2 for demolition waste identification.
- C. Form CWM-3 for construction waste reduction work plan.
- D. Form CWM-4 for demolition waste reduction work plan.
- E. Form CWM-5 cost/revenue analysis of construction waste reduction work plan.
- F. Form CWM-6 cost/revenue analysis of demolition waste reduction work plan.
- G. Form CWM-7 for construction waste
- H. Form CWM-8 for demolition waste.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

<b>FORM CWM-1: CONSTRUCTION WASTE IDENTIFICATION</b>							
<b>MATERIAL CATEGORY</b>	<b>GENERATION POINT</b>	<b>EST. QUANTITY OF MATERIALS RECEIVED* (A)</b>	<b>EST. WASTE - % (B)</b>	<b>TOTAL EST. QUANTITY OF WASTE* (C = A x B)</b>	<b>EST. VOLUME CY (CM)</b>	<b>EST. WEIGHT TONS (TONNES)</b>	<b>REMARKS AND ASSUMPTIONS</b>
Packaging: Cardboard							
Packaging: Boxes							
Packaging: Plastic Sheet or Film							
Packaging: Polystyrene							
Packaging: Pallets or Skids							
Packaging: Crates							
Packaging: Paint Cans							
Packaging: Plastic Pails							
Site-Clearing Waste							
Masonry or CMU							
Lumber: Cut-Offs							
Lumber: Warped Pieces							
Plywood or OSB (scraps)							
Wood Forms							
Wood Waste Chutes							
Wood Trim (cut-offs)							
Metals							
Insulation							
Roofing							
Joint Sealant Tubes							
Gypsum Board (scraps)							
Carpet and Pad (scraps)							
Piping							
Electrical Conduit							
Other:							

\* Insert units of measure.

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

**FORM CWM-2: DEMOLITION WASTE IDENTIFICATION**

MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	EST. QUANTITY	EST. VOLUME CY (CM)	EST. WEIGHT TONS (TONNES)	REMARKS AND ASSUMPTIONS
Asphaltic Concrete Paving				
Concrete				
Brick				
CMU				
Lumber				
Plywood and OSB				
Wood Paneling				
Wood Trim				
Miscellaneous Metals				
Structural Steel				
Rough Hardware				
Insulation				
Roofing				
Doors and Frames				
Door Hardware				
Windows				
Glazing				
Acoustical Tile				
Carpet				
Carpet Pad				
Demountable Partitions				
Equipment				
Cabinets				
Plumbing Fixtures				
Piping				
Piping Supports and Hangers				
Valves				
Sprinklers				
Mechanical Equipment				
Electrical Conduit				
Copper Wiring				
Light Fixtures				
Lamps				
Lighting Ballasts				
Electrical Devices				
Switchgear and Panelboards				
Transformers				
Other:				

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

<b>FORM CWM-3: CONSTRUCTION WASTE REDUCTION WORK PLAN</b>						
<b>MATERIAL CATEGORY</b>	<b>GENERATION POINT</b>	<b>TOTAL EST. QUANTITY OF WASTE TONS (TONNES)</b>	<b>DISPOSAL METHOD AND QUANTITY</b>			<b>HANDLING AND TRANSPORTION PROCEDURES</b>
			<b>EST. AMOUNT SALVAGED TONS (TONNES)</b>	<b>EST. AMOUNT RECYCLED TONS (TONNES)</b>	<b>EST. AMOUNT DISPOSED TO LANDFILL TONS (TONNES)</b>	
Packaging: Cardboard						
Packaging: Boxes						
Packaging: Plastic Sheet or Film						
Packaging: Polystyrene						
Packaging: Pallets or Skids						
Packaging: Crates						
Packaging: Paint Cans						
Packaging: Plastic Pails						
Site-Clearing Waste						
Masonry or CMU						
Lumber: Cut-Offs						
Lumber: Warped Pieces						
Plywood or OSB (scraps)						
Wood Forms						
Wood Waste Chutes						
Wood Trim (cut-offs)						
Metals						
Insulation						
Roofing						
Joint Sealant Tubes						
Gypsum Board (scraps)						
Carpet and Pad (scraps)						
Piping						
Electrical Conduit						
Other:						

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

<b>FORM CWM-4: DEMOLITION WASTE REDUCTION WORK PLAN</b>						
MATERIAL CATEGORY	GENERATION POINT	TOTAL EST. QUANTITY OF WASTE TONS (TONNES)	DISPOSAL METHOD AND QUANTITY			HANDLING AND TRANSPORTION PROCEDURES
			EST. AMOUNT SALVAGED TONS (TONNES)	EST. AMOUNT RECYCLED TONS (TONNES)	EST. AMOUNT DISPOSED TO LANDFILL TONS (TONNES)	
Asphaltic Concrete Paving						
Concrete						
Brick						
CMU						
Lumber						
Plywood and OSB						
Wood Paneling						
Wood Trim						
Miscellaneous Metals						
Structural Steel						
Rough Hardware						
Insulation						
Roofing						
Doors and Frames						
Door Hardware						
Windows						
Glazing						
Acoustical Tile						
Carpet						
Carpet Pad						
Demountable Partitions						
Equipment						
Cabinets						
Plumbing Fixtures						
Piping						
Supports and Hangers						
Valves						
Sprinklers						
Mechanical Equipment						
Electrical Conduit						
Copper Wiring						
Light Fixtures						
Lamps						
Lighting Ballasts						
Electrical Devices						
Switchgear and Panelboards						
Transformers						
Other:						

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

**FORM CWM-5: COST/REVENUE ANALYSIS OF CONSTRUCTION WASTE REDUCTION WORK PLAN**

MATERIALS	TOTAL QUANTITY OF MATERIALS (VOL. OR WEIGHT) (A)	EST. COST OF DISPOSAL (B)	TOTAL EST. COST OF DISPOSAL (C = A x B)	REVENUE FROM SALVAGED MATERIALS (D)	REVENUE FROM RECYCLED MATERIALS (E)	LANDFILL TIPPING FEES AVOIDED (F)	HANDLING AND TRANSPORTATION COSTS AVOIDED (G)	NET COST SAVINGS OF WORK PLAN (H = D+E+F+G)
Packaging: Cardboard								
Packaging: Boxes								
Packaging: Plastic Sheet or Film								
Packaging: Polystyrene								
Packaging: Pallets or Skids								
Packaging: Crates								
Packaging: Paint Cans								
Packaging: Plastic Pails								
Site-Clearing Waste								
Masonry or CMU								
Lumber: Cut-Offs								
Lumber: Warped Pieces								
Plywood or OSB (scraps)								
Wood Forms								
Wood Waste Chutes								
Wood Trim (cut-offs)								
Metals								
Insulation								
Roofing								
Joint Sealant Tubes								
Gypsum Board (scraps)								
Carpet and Pad (scraps)								
Piping								
Electrical Conduit								
Other:								



Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

**FORM CWM-6: COST/REVENUE ANALYSIS OF DEMOLITION WASTE REDUCTION WORK PLAN**

MATERIALS	TOTAL QUANTITY OF MATERIALS (VOL. OR WEIGHT) (A)	EST. COST OF DISPOSAL (B)	TOTAL EST. COST OF DISPOSAL (C = A x B)	REVENUE FROM SALVAGED MATERIALS (D)	REVENUE FROM RECYCLED MATERIALS (E)	LANDFILL TIPPING FEES AVOIDED (F)	HANDLING AND TRANSPORTATION COSTS AVOIDED (G)	NET COST SAVINGS OF WORK PLAN (H = D+E+F+G)
Asphaltic Concrete Paving								
Concrete								
Brick								
CMU								
Lumber								
Plywood and OSB								
Wood Paneling								
Wood Trim								
Miscellaneous Metals								
Structural Steel								
Rough Hardware								
Insulation								
Roofing								
Doors and Frames								
Door Hardware								
Windows								
Glazing								
Acoustical Tile								
Carpet								
Carpet Pad								
Demountable Partitions								
Equipment								
Cabinets								
Plumbing Fixtures								
Piping								
Supports and Hangers								
Valves								
Sprinklers								
Mech. Equipment								
Electrical Conduit								
Copper Wiring								
Light Fixtures								
Lamps								
Lighting Ballasts								
Electrical Devices								
Switchgear and Panelboards								
Transformers								

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

**FORM CWM-7: CONSTRUCTION WASTE REDUCTION PROGRESS REPORT**

MATERIAL CATEGORY	GENERATION POINT	TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE TONS (TONNES) (A)	QUANTITY OF WASTE SALVAGED		QUANTITY OF WASTE RECYCLED		TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE RECOVERED TONS (TONNES) (D = B + C)	TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE RECOVERED % (D / A x 100)
			ESTIMATED TONS (TONNES)	ACTUAL TONS (TONNES) (B)	ESTIMATED TONS (TONNES)	ACTUAL TONS (TONNES) (C)		
Packaging: Cardboard								
Packaging: Boxes								
Packaging: Plastic Sheet or Film								
Packaging: Polystyrene								
Packaging: Pallets or Skids								
Packaging: Crates								
Packaging: Paint Cans								
Packaging: Plastic Pails								
Site-Clearing Waste								
Masonry or CMU								
Lumber: Cut-Offs								
Lumber: Warped Pieces								
Plywood or OSB (scraps)								
Wood Forms								
Wood Waste Chutes								
Wood Trim (cut-offs)								
Metals								
Insulation								
Roofing								
Joint Sealant Tubes								
Gypsum Board (scraps)								
Carpet and Pad (scraps)								
Piping								
Electrical Conduit								
Other:								

Copyright 2010 by The American Institute of Architects (AIA)  
 Exclusively published and distributed by Architectural Computer Services, Inc. (ARCOM) for the AIA

FORM CWM-8: DEMOLITION WASTE REDUCTION PROGRESS REPORT								
MATERIAL CATEGORY	GENERATION POINT	TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE TONS (TONNES) (A)	QUANTITY OF WASTE SALVAGED		QUANTITY OF WASTE RECYCLED		TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE RECOVERED TONS (TONNES) (D = B + C)	TOTAL QUANTITY OF WASTE RECOVERED % (D / A x 100)
			ESTIMATED TONS (TONNES)	ACTUAL TONS (TONNES) (B)	ESTIMATED TONS (TONNES)	ACTUAL TONS (TONNES) (C)		
Asphaltic Concrete Paving								
Concrete								
Brick								
CMU								
Lumber								
Plywood and OSB								
Wood Paneling								
Wood Trim								
Miscellaneous Metals								
Structural Steel								
Rough Hardware								
Insulation								
Roofing								
Doors and Frames								
Door Hardware								
Windows								
Glazing								
Acoustical Tile								
Carpet								
Carpet Pad								
Demountable Partitions								
Equipment								
Cabinets								
Plumbing Fixtures								
Piping								
Supports and Hangers								
Valves								
Sprinklers								
Mechanical Equipment								
Electrical Conduit								
Copper Wiring								
Light Fixtures								
Lamps								
Lighting Ballasts								
Electrical Devices								
Switchgear and Panelboards								
Transformers								

## SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 3. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

#### 1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect Construction Manager. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Construction Manager's signature for receipt of submittals.
  5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
  7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

## 1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
  5. Submit final completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in one of the following formats:
    - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.

- b. PDF electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.
- c. Web-based project software upload. Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
  1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
      - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA ACR. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
    - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
    - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.



- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
  - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
  - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
  - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
  - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00

## SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for verification and compilation of data into operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics like a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- D. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

#### 1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.

9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."
- 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL
- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
  2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
  3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- 1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS
- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
  2. Flood.

3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

#### 1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor have delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.

6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color coding where required for identification.

#### 1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify

each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

- a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
  2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

#### 1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 78 23



## SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Work Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  3. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

#### 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
  - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

#### 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
  - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

## SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator and instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

- C. Pre-construction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## 1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    - d. Product maintenance manuals.
    - e. Project Record Documents.

- f. Identification systems.
  - g. Warranties and bonds.
  - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.

- b. Repair instructions.
- c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
- d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
- e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## 1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

## 1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, , through Construction Manager, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 01 79 00



## SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. OPR and BoD documentation are included by reference for information only.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of commissioning without regard to specific systems, assemblies, or components.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for commissioning process activities for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BoD: Basis of Design. A document that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.
- B. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- D. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements. A document that details the functional requirements of a project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated. These include Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information.
- E. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

#### 1.4 COMMISSIONING TEAM

- A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s): Individuals, each having the authority to act on behalf of the entity he or she represents, explicitly organized to implement the commissioning process through coordinated action. The commissioning team shall consist of, but not be limited to, representatives of Contractor, including Project superintendent and subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists deemed appropriate by the CxA.

B. Members Appointed by Owner:

1. CxA: The designated person, company, or entity that plans, schedules, and coordinates the commissioning team to implement the commissioning process. Owner will engage the CxA under a separate contract.
2. Representatives of the facility user and operation and maintenance personnel.
3. Architect and engineering design professionals.

1.5 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide the OPR documentation to the CxA and Contractor for information and use.
- B. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities.
- C. Provide the BoD documentation, prepared by Architect and approved by Owner, to the CxA and Contractor for use in developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance training plan.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Contractor shall assign representatives with expertise and authority to act on its behalf and shall schedule them to participate in and perform commissioning process activities including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
  2. Cooperate with the CxA for resolution of issues recorded in the Issues Log.
  3. Attend commissioning team meetings held on a monthly basis.
  4. Integrate and coordinate commissioning process activities with construction schedule.
  5. Review and accept construction checklists provided by the CxA.
  6. Complete electronic construction checklists as Work is completed and provide to the Commissioning Authority on a weekly basis.
  7. Review and accept commissioning process test procedures provided by the Commissioning Authority.
  8. Complete commissioning process test procedures.

1.7 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Organize and lead the commissioning team.
- B. Provide commissioning plan.
- C. Convene commissioning team meetings.
- D. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures.
- E. Verify the execution of commissioning process activities using random sampling. The sampling rate may vary from 1 to 100 percent. Verification will include, but is not limited to, equipment submittals, construction checklists, training, operating and maintenance data, tests, and test

reports to verify compliance with the OPR. When a random sample does not meet the requirement, the CxA will report the failure in the Issues Log.

- F. Prepare and maintain the Issues Log.
- G. Prepare and maintain completed construction checklist log.
- H. Witness systems, assemblies, equipment, and component startup.
- I. Compile test data, inspection reports, and certificates; include them in the systems manual and commissioning process report.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 91 13

## SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
- 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
- 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
- 2. Division 01 sections for cutting and patching procedures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to a location designated by the District.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

## 1.5 PREDEMOLITION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of the campus and buildings immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials:
  - 1. Hazardous materials if present will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities and fire department access ways in service during selective demolition operations.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.
- B. Obtain owner's approval of the selective demolition schedule prior to proceeding with the work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.
  - 2. Comply with Title 24, Part 9, California Fire Code Fire Safety.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Utilities serving the site and buildings outside of the scope of Work or phase are to be maintained in full and continuous operation unless prior written approval of the Owner is obtained.
- B. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

- C. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- D. Perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
  - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
- E. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.
  - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  - 2. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building and site.
  - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

### SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

02 41 19-4

- d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
- e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 01 sections.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.



4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 72 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- ### 3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS
- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.

- D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.

### 3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and recycle or dispose of them according to requirements in Division 01 and in a manner complying with 2016 CAL Green.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

## SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel reinforcement bars.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review the following:
  - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
  - b. Construction contraction and isolation joints.
  - c. Steel-reinforcement installation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
2. Epoxy repair coating.
3. Bar supports.

B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:

1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of Architect.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Statements: For testing and inspection agency.

B. Welding certificates.

1. Reinforcement To Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.
  - C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
    1. Steel Reinforcement:
      - a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.
  - D. Field quality-control reports.
  - E. Minutes of preinstallation conference.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
  - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage and to avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
    1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed.

### 2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.
  1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
- C. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch in diameter.

1. Finish: Plain.

## 2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
  1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
  2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
  1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
  2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318.
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
  1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars to be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches, whichever is greater.
  2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318.

### 3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.

- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with ACI 117.

#### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.

END OF SECTION 032000

## SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 031000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for form-facing materials, form liners, insulating concrete forms, and waterstops.
2. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.

- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
- b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
- c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
- d. Concrete Subcontractor.

2. Review the following:

- a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
- b. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
- c. Semirigid joint fillers.
- d. Vapor-retarder installation.
- e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
- f. Cold and hot weather concreting procedures.
- g. Concrete finishes and finishing.
- h. Curing procedures.

- i. Forms and form-removal limitations.
- j. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
- k. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
- l. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurements.
- m. Concrete repair procedures.
- n. Concrete protection.
- o. Initial curing and field curing of field test cylinders (ASTM C31/C31M.)
- p. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Silica fume.
6. Aggregates.
7. Admixtures:
  - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
8. Vapor retarders.
9. Floor and slab treatments.
10. Curing materials.
11. Joint fillers.
12. Repair materials.

##### B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
3. Durability exposure class.
4. Maximum w/cm.
5. Slump limit.
6. Air content.
7. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
8. Intended placement method.
9. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

##### C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.



- D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:
1. Concrete Class designation.
  2. Location within Project.
  3. Exposure Class designation.
  4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
  5. Final finish for floors.
  6. Curing process.
  7. Floor treatment if any.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
  2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
  3. Testing agency: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
1. Cementitious materials.
  2. Admixtures.
  3. Fiber reinforcement.
  4. Curing compounds.
  5. Floor and slab treatments.
  6. Bonding agents.
  7. Adhesives.
  8. Vapor retarders.
  9. Semirigid joint filler.
  10. Joint-filler strips.
  11. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
1. Portland cement.
  2. Fly ash.
  3. Aggregates.
  4. Admixtures:
    - a. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Include independent test reports, indicating compliance with specified requirements, including dosage rate used in test.
- D. Research Reports:
1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
  2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.
- E. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician.
  - 1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.
- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- C. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
- D. Field Quality-Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

## 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
  - 1. Include the following information in each test report:
    - a. Admixture dosage rates.
    - b. Slump.
    - c. Air content.
    - d. Seven-day compressive strength.
    - e. 28-day compressive strength.
    - f. Permeability.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
  - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F, other than reinforcing steel.

5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier material and accessories for sheet vapor retarder/ termite barrier and accessories that do not comply with requirements or that fail to resist penetration by termites within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type II,.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.

- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.

- D. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C330/C330M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

- E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

- F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.
  - 7. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type S, hydrophilic, permeability-reducing crystalline admixture, capable of reducing water absorption of concrete exposed to hydrostatic pressure (PRAH).
    - a. Permeability: No leakage when tested in accordance with U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRD C48 at a hydraulic pressure of 200 psi for 14 days.
- G. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M.

### 2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than 15 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

### 2.4 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
  - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
  - 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
  - 3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
  - 4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
  - 5. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

4. Use permeability-reducing admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

## 2.5 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Class [A]: Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.
  1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0 W0 W1.
  2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
  4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

## 2.6 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and ASTM C1116/C1116M, and furnish batch ticket information.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
  1. Daily access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
  4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
  1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
  1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
    - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.

2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.5 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

#### A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
  - a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch.
  - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class D.
  - e. Apply to concrete surfaces.

#### B. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- #### A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

#### A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

- #### B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

#### C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases 6 inches high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
  - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
  - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

### 3.8 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
  2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
  3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h, calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.

### 3.9 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

### 3.10 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least **[one] [six]** month(s).
  2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.11 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
  1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.



2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
    - a. Correct low and high areas.
    - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
    - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
    - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
    - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
    - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
    - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
    - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
    - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
    - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
    - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.

- a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
  - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
  - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
  - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- D. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- E. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
1. Testing agency to be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.
  2. Testing agency to immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  3. Testing agency to report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
    - a. Test reports to include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
      - 1) Project name.
      - 2) Name of testing agency.
      - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
      - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
      - 12) Field test results.
      - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
      - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.

- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- D. Inspections:
1. Headed bolts and studs.
  2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M to be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete. Provide one additional set for each additional 50 cu. Yd or fraction thereof or for each 2000 square feet of surface area for wall or slabs.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
    - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:

- a. Cast and cure two sets of three 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
  - a. Test one set of three cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
  - b. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
9. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi, or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi.
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests:
  - a. Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
  - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
    - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength to be in accordance with ACI 301, Section 1.6.6.3.
12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 72 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### 3.13 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
  1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

Covina Valley USD District Wide ES HVAC Replacement  
Covina Valley Unified School District  
Covina, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22605-00  
100% Construction Documents

END OF SECTION 033000

## SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Structural-steel materials.
  - 2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Structural-steel materials.
  - 2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - 3. Anchor rods.
  - 4. Threaded rods.
  - 5. Shop primer.
  - 6. Galvanized-steel primer.
  - 7. Etching cleaner.
  - 8. Galvanized repair paint.
  - 9. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.

2. Include embedment Drawings.
  3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand-critical welds.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
- F. Survey of existing conditions.
- G. Source quality-control reports.
- H. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, [**Category ACSE**] [**Category CSE**].
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  1. ANSI/AISC 303.
- B. Connection Design Information:
  1. Connection designs have been completed and connections indicated on the Drawings.

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- B. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Channels, Angles, S-Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M.
- D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
  1. Weight Class: Standard, Extra strong, Double-extra strong.
  2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

### 2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.



## 2.4 RODS

- A. Threaded Rods: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A63 hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.

## 2.5 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
  - 1. Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: MPI#134.
  - 1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
  - 2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, ASTM A780/A780M.

## 2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6/A6M and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- C. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- D. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted in accordance with SSPC-SP 1.
- E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
  1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.10 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
  1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  5. Galvanized surfaces unless indicated to be painted.
  6. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner [**or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16**].
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
  4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
    - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear stud connector.
    - b. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear stud connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear stud connectors already tested.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in

intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction and structural-steel framing until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates, and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.
  2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
  1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  - 2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
    - a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
      - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
      - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
      - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
      - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.

END OF SECTION 051200

2. Metal nosings and treads.
3. Paint products.
4. Grout.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and stage curtains.
  2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  4. Metal ladders.
  5. Pipe rack in scene shop.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Abrasive nosings shall comply with California Title 24.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- F. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- G. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- J. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- K. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- L. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 3

1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
1. Hot dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide product compatible with system as required per Sections 09 9113 "Exterior Painting," 09 9123 "Interior Painting," or 09 9601 "High-Performance Coatings" as appropriate for location and painting system indicated.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.



## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 5

- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.8 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

## 2.9 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.10 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.

- C. Shop prime iron and steel items unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and primers specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Clean surfaces to be painted per primer manufacturer's written instructions. Remove loose rust and mill scale and other spatter, slag, flux deposits, and any other potential bond-breaking materials.
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## 2.12 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70percentPVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 7

- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and stage curtains securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

### 3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

## SECTION 05 52 13 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Railing brackets.
  - 2. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

- D. Product Test Reports: For pipe and tube railings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E894 and ASTM E935.
- E. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with California Building Code Section 11B-505.
  - 1. Top of gripping surfaces of handrails shall be 34 inch minimum and 38 inch maximum vertically above walking surfaces, stair nosings, and ramp surfaces. Handrails shall be at a consistent height above such surfaces.
  - 2. Clearance between handrail gripping surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is 3 inches (76 mm) maximum deep and 18 inches (457 mm) minimum clear above the top of the handrail.
  - 3. Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. Where provided, horizontal projections shall occur 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface.
  - 4. Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.
  - 5. Handrail gripping surfaces with a non-circular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 6 1/4 inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of 2 1/4 inches (57 mm) maximum.
  - 6. Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

7. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.
  8. Handrail gripping surfaces shall extend beyond and the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with CBC section 11B-505.10. Such extensions are not required for continuous handrails at the inside turn of switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps.
  9. The orientation of at least one handrail shall be in the direction of the stair run, perpendicular to the direction of the stair nosing, and shall not reduce the minimum required width of the stair. CBC Section 11B-505.2.1
  10. A curb or barrier shall be provided that prevents the passage of a 4-inch (102 mm) diameter sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the finish floor or ground surface. To prevent wheel entrapment, the curb or barrier shall provide a continuous and uninterrupted barrier along the length of the ramp. CBC Section 11B-405.9.2
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- C. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  2. Infill of Guards:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
    - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- ## 2.2 METALS, GENERAL
- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
  - B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
- ## 2.3 STEEL RAILINGS
- A. Tubing: ASTM A500 (cold formed).
  - B. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.

1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide the following:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329 for zinc coating.
2. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
3. Stainless Steel Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.

C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
3. Provide tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

05 52 13 - 4



- E. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - 1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
  - 1. Field welding will not be accepted where connections could have been made in the factory and shipped to the site as a single piece.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:

1. As detailed.
  2. By bending.
- J. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- O. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- P. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

## 2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Railings:
1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  2. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
  3. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  4. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
- C. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
  - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
  - 1. Coat, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint, concealed surfaces of aluminum that are in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

### 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material or attached to post with set screws.
- D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - 1. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
  - 2. For stainless steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.

### 3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends.
- C. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - 3. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Clean stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13

## SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Wall and roof sheathing.
3. Wood furring, blocking and nailers.
4. Preservative and fire-retardant treatment of wood.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.

4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  3. Engineered wood products.
  4. Shear panels.
  5. Power-driven fasteners.
  6. Post-installed anchors.
  7. Metal framing anchors.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Lumber Grading Agency: Certified by ALSC.
- B. Plywood Grading Agency: Certified by APA.
- C. Accredited certification bodies shall be one of the following:
  1. Scientific Certification Systems, [www.scscertified.com](http://www.scscertified.com).

#### 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to CBC, California Building Code, (CCR) California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 23.
- B. Allowable stress design values shall follow the CBC, California Building Code, (CCR) California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Section 2306, ANSI/AWC NDS-2018 - National Design Specifications for Wood Construction, and ANSI/AWS SDPWS-2015 - Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Lumber Grading Rules: WCLIB and WWP. Lumber shall bear WCLIB grade stamp.
- B. Structural Framing, Studs, Plate and Blocking: Douglas Fir Species, No. 1 grade.
- C. Non-structural Light Framing Studs, Plate and Blocking: Douglas Fir species, No. 2 grade.
- D. Plank and Decking: Douglas Fir species, Com Dex.

### 2.2 MOISTURE CONTENT

- A. 2x and 3x material, 19 percent moisture content, S-Dry. Structural and non-structural framing, beam, rafters, joists, studs, plates and blocking.
- B. 4x and 6x material, 19 percent moisture content at time of application of Architectural finishes. 22 percent maximum moisture content at time of delivery to project site. Materials to be air dried as required to achieve
- C. 22 percent moisture content prior to delivery to site. Structural and non-structural framing, beam, rafters, joists, studs, plates and blocking.
- D. Lumber materials with a moisture content above 19 percent and less than 22 percent at the time of installation shall be tested for moisture content prior to covering with Architectural finishes. Moisture tests shall be performed under the provisions of Section 01 45 29.
- E. No lumber shall be covered with an Architectural finish until the moisture content of the lumber is 19 percent or below.

### 2.3 PLYWOOD MATERIALS

- A. Roof Sheathing: APA Structural I, Grade C-D, Exposure 1 minimum 5-ply construction, meeting product Standard PS-1-09.
- B. Wall Sheathing: APA Structural I, Grade C-D, Exposure 1 minimum 5-ply construction, meeting product standard PS-1-09.
- C. Underlayment: APA Underlayment, Exposure 1, 3/8-inch-thick, sanded; minimum 3-ply construction.
- D. Telephone and Electrical Panel Boards: APA Grade C-D with exterior glue, minimum 5 ply, 3/4-inch-thick, meeting PS-1-09.



## 2.4 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment: Where lumber or plywood is indicated as treated or is specified herein to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA Standards for Lumber and Plywood.
- B. Pressure treat all lumber in contact with ground. After treatment kiln-dry lumber to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- C. Pressure treat above ground items as indicated. After treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 percent and 15 percent. Treat indicated items and the following:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers and waterproofing.
  - 2. Horizontal wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Horizontal wood framing members less than 18 inches above grade.
  - 4. Wood floor plates installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.
  - 5. Ends of wood girders entering masonry or concrete walls.
  - 6. Framing members used in exterior door, window, or louver openings.
- D. Complete fabrication of treated items prior to treatment, where possible. If cut or drilled after treatment, coat cut or drilled surfaces with heavy brush coat of same chemical used for treatment and to comply with AWPA M4. Inspect each piece of lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.

## 2.5 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  - 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.

- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Concealed blocking.
  - 2. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
  - 3. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
  - 4. Roof construction.
  - 5. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Cants.
  - 5. Furring.
  - 6. Grounds.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Douglas Fir, No. 2 grade lumber.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, No. 2 grade lumber of any species may be used if it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Hot-dipped galvanized steel for exterior, high humidity, and treated wood locations; plain finish elsewhere; size and type to suit condition.
- B. Connectors: As indicated.

- C. Anchors: Thru bolt or anchor bolt to concrete or masonry unless otherwise noted. Bolt for anchorage to steel unless otherwise noted.
- D. Building Paper: No. 15 asphalt felt. Plain untreated cellulosic building paper.
- E. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- F. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with ANSI/AWC NDS-2018, "National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction – with 2018 NDS Supplement," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- J. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
  - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
  - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 10 feet o.c.
- K. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- L. Comply with AWPA U1 and M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- M. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- N. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the 2019 California Building Code.

2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- O. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- P. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
  2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
  3. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

### 3.2 FRAMING

- A. Erect wood framing members level and plumb.
- B. Place horizontal members laid flat, crown side-up.
- C. Construct framing members full length without splices.
- D. Double members at openings over 1 sq. ft. Space short stud over and under opening to stud spacing.
- E. Construct double joist headers at floor and ceiling openings. Frame rigidly into joists.
- F. Construct double joists under wall studding.

### 3.3 WOOD FURRING, BLOCKING, AND GROUNDS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Item locations include but are not limited to toilet accessories, toilet partitions, door frames, window frames, hardware, access doors and ladders, cabinetry, miscellaneous equipment locations and mechanical, plumbing and electrical item locations and all other locations of wall mounted items.
- C. Install plywood backboards for telephone, data and other electrical equipment.
- D. Form to shapes as shown and cut as required for true line and level of work to be attached. Coordinate location with other work involved.
- E. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loading. Countersink bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Build into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, anchor to formwork before concrete placement.
- G. Install plumb and level with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finished work.
- H. Firestop all concealed spaces of wood stud walls, ceilings and floor levels at 10-foot intervals both vertically and horizontally.
- I. Firestop all concealed vertical and horizontal spaces as occur at soffits, vents, stair stringers, pipes and similar openings in compliance with CBC, (CCR) Title 24, Part 2, Section 717.
- J. Fire stopping shall consist of closely fitted wood blocks of 2-inch nominal thickness lumber of same width as framing members.
- K. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

### 3.4 SHEATHING

- A. Secure roof sheathing perpendicular to framing members with ends staggered. Secure sheet edges over firm bearing. Provide solid edge blocking between sheets. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at ends and edges.
- B. Secure wall sheathing perpendicular to wall studs, with ends staggered, over firm bearing.
- C. Install telephone and electrical panel back boards where required. Size of backboards to be 12 inches beyond size of electrical panel boards.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

### 3.6 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Recycle lumber waste under the provisions of Division 01 specifications.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Division 01 specifications.

- B. Lumber materials will be inspected for compliance with material grading rules, limitations for moisture content and pest infestation prior to any materials being concealed from view or being covered with an architectural finish.

### 3.8 TOLERANCES

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch maximum from true position.
- B. Surface Flatness of Floor: 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

## SECTION 07 01 50.72 - REHABILITATION OF BUILT-UP ROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. New base and penetration flashings associated with HVAC installations.

#### 1.2 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Demolished materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D1079 "Standard Terminology Relating to Roofing and Waterproofing" and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
- B. Existing Roofing System: Built-up asphalt roofing, and components and accessories between deck and roofing membrane.
- C. Roofing Coating Preparation: Existing roofing that is to remain and be prepared to accept roof repairs.
- D. Patching: Removal of a portion of existing membrane roofing system from deck or removal of selected components and accessories from existing membrane roofing system and replacement with similar materials.
- E. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
- F. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not indicated to be removed.
- G. Manufacturer: Manufacturer of roofing rehabilitation products, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- I. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from re-roofing preparation, demolition or selective demolition operations.
- J. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 ROOFING CONFERENCES

- A. Roofing Rehabilitation Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to roofing system.



1. Meet with Owner; roofing materials manufacturer's representative; roofing re-coating Installer including project manager and foreman; and installers whose work interfaces with or affects re-coating including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment requiring removal and replacement as part of the Work.
2. Review methods and procedures related to new flashings, including roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review drawings and specifications.
4. Review roof drainage during each stage of coating application and review roof drain plugging and plug removal procedures.
5. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect coating.
7. Review existing conditions that may require notification of Owner before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, Manufacturer, and Roofing Inspector.
  1. Letter written for this Project indicating manufacturer approval of Installer to apply specified products and provide specified warranty.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, and for dust control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Contractor's Product Certificate: Submit certificate, indicating products intended for Work of this Section, including product names and numbers and manufacturers names, with statement indicating that products to be provided meet the requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Indicate that proposed system components are compatible.
- D. Warranties: Unexecuted sample copies of special warranties.
- E. Photographs: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including exterior and interior finish surfaces, which might be misconstrued as having been damaged by coating operations. Submit before Work begins.
- F. Inspection Reports: Reports of Roofing Inspector. Include weather conditions, description of work performed, tests performed, defective work observed, and corrective actions required and carried out.
  1. Submit report within 24 hours after inspection.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: To include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Warranties: Executed copies of approved warranty forms.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and certified by manufacturer, including a full-time on-site supervisor with a minimum of five years' experience installing products comparable to those specified, able to communicate verbally with Contractor, Architect, and employees, and the following:
  - 1. Qualified by the manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and furnish warranty of type specified.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Primary product manufacturer with minimum five years' experience in manufacture of comparable products in successful use in similar applications, and able to furnish warranty with provisions matching specified requirements.
- C. Roofing Inspector Qualifications: A technical representative of manufacturer not engaged in the sale of products and experienced in the installation and maintenance of the specified roofing system, qualified to perform roofing observation and inspection specified in Field Quality Control Article, to determine Installer's compliance with the requirements of this Project, and approved by the manufacturer to issue warranty certification. The Roofing Inspector shall be one of the following:
  - 1. An authorized full-time technical employee of the manufacturer.
  - 2. An independent party certified as a Registered Roof Observer by the Roof Consultants Institute, retained by the Contractor or the Manufacturer and approved by the Manufacturer.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with rehabilitation work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering into existing roofing system or building.
  - 1. Store all materials prior to application at temperatures recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Apply coatings within range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Do not apply roofing in rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Protect building to be rehabilitated, adjacent buildings, walkways, site improvements, exterior plantings, and landscaping from damage or soiling from rehabilitation operations.
- C. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.

- D. Daily Protection: Coordinate installation of roofing so insulation and other components of roofing system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Installer Warranty: Installer's warranty signed by Installer, as follows.
  - 1. Form of Warranty: Form acceptable to Roofing Manufacturer and Owner.
  - 2. Scope of Warranty: Work of this Section.
  - 3. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: The roof system specified in this Section is based upon products of Tremco CPG Incorporated. Provide specified products or pre-approved equivalent products.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Rehabilitated roofing shall withstand exposure to weather without failure or leaks due to defective manufacture or installation.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

#### 2.3 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. General: Roof rehabilitation coating materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with components of existing membrane roofing system.
- B. Temporary Roofing Materials: Selection of materials and design of temporary roofing is responsibility of Contractor.
- C. Temporary Roof Drainage: Design and selection of materials for temporary roof drainage are responsibilities of the Contractor.
- D. Infill Materials: Where required to replace test cores and to patch existing roofing, use infill materials matching existing membrane roofing system materials, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.4 RESTORATIVE COATINGS

- A. Cold-Applied Rubberized Surfacer for Bituminous Roofing: Neoprene-modified water-based low VOC low odor asphalt emulsion surfacer formulated for use over new smooth surfaced bituminous roofing.

1. Tremco, Tremlastic S.
  2. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC), maximum, ASTM D3960: 25 g/L.
  3. Elongation, ASTM D412: 100 percent.
- B. Cold-Applied Reflective Aluminum Roof Coating: Water-based aluminum coating approved by manufacturer.

## 2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Cold-applied bio-based low odor urethane roofing adhesive, two-part, USDA BioPreferred, formulated for compatibility and use with specified roofing membranes and flashings.
1. Tremco, Powerply Endure Bio Adhesive TF.
  2. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC), maximum, ASTM D3690: 0 g/L.
  3. Low Temperature Flexibility, ASTM D2240: Pass at -30 deg F (-34 deg C).
  4. Solids, by Volume, ASTM D2697: 100 percent.
  5. Biobase Content, Minimum, ASTM D6866: 70 percent.
- B. Base Sheet: ASTM D6164 Type I Grade S SBS/RET/Urethane-modified asphalt coated polyester reinforced high elongation sheet, smooth surfaced.
- C. Reinforcing Fabric:
1. Reinforcing fabric, stitch-bonded polyester, 100 percent recycled content, infused with curing accelerant activated when installed in conjunction with specially formulated adhesive.
    - a. Tremco, Rapid Set Fabric.
    - b. Breaking Strength, minimum, ASTM D5034: Machine direction, 65 lbf/in (11 kN/m); Cross machine direction, 85 lbf/in (14 kN/m).
    - c. Elongation, ASTM D5034: Machine direction, 24 percent; Cross machine direction, 95 percent.
    - d. Weight, ASTM D3776: 2.5 lb/100 sq. ft. (120 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
    - e. Thickness, minimum, ASTM D1777: 0.025 inch (0.63 mm).
    - f. Recycled Content, post consumer: 83 percent.
  2. Reinforcing fabric, stitch-bonded polyester, 100 percent recycled content, infused with curing accelerant activated when installed in conjunction with specially formulated adhesive.
    - a. Tremco, Permafab.

- b. Breaking Strength, minimum, ASTM D 5034: Machine direction, 65 lbf/in (12.0 kN/m); Cross machine direction, 85 lbf/in (12.0 kN/m).
  - c. Elongation: Machine direction, 24 percent; Cross machine direction, 95 percent.
  - d. Weight, ASTM D 3776: 2.5 lb/100 sq. ft. (120 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
  - e. Thickness, minimum, ASTM D 1777: 0.025 inch (0.63 mm).
  - f. Recycled Content, post-consumer: 83 percent.
- D. Bio-Based Polyurethane Roof Coating Base Coat: ASTM D7311, Two-part catalyzed low-odor polyurethane roof base coating formulated for direct application and for use with fiber reinforcement in conjunction with a compatible top coat.
- E. Bio-Based Polyurethane Roof Coating Top Coat: ASTM D7311, Two-part catalyzed low-odor polyurethane roof top coating formulated for direct application over compatible reinforced base coat.
- F. Polyurethane Metal Primer: Water-based, quick-drying, brush-grade one-part primer for use as an adhesion promoter for urethane sealants and coatings to non-porous surfaces.
- G. Asphalt Primer, Water-Based: Water-based, polymer modified, asphalt primer.
- 1. Asbestos Content, EPA 600/R13/116: None.
  - 2. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC), maximum, ASTM D 3960: 2 g/L.

## 2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with existing roofing system.
- B. Joint Sealant: Elastomeric joint sealant recommended in writing by joint sealant manufacturer as compatible with applied coating and project substrates, with movement capability appropriate for application.
- 1. Joint Sealant, Polyurethane: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50 single-component moisture curing sealant, formulated for compatibility and use in dynamic and static joints; paintable.
    - a. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC), maximum, ASTM D3960: 40 g/L.
    - b. Hardness, Shore A, ASTM C661: 40.
    - c. Adhesion to Concrete, ASTM C794: 35 pli.
    - d. Tensile Strength, ASTM D412: 350 psi (2410 kPa).
    - e. Color: Aluminum Stone.
- C. Skirt Metal: 22-gauge galvanized metal with hemmed edge.

- D. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide miscellaneous accessories recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

## 2.7 WALKWAYS

### A. Walkway Pads:

1. Walkway pads, ceramic-granule-surfaced reinforced asphaltic composition slip-resisting pads, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick minimum.
  - a. Flexural Strength at max. load, minimum, ASTM C203: 218 psi (1.5 kPa).
  - b. Granule adhesion (weight loss), maximum, ASTM D4977: 1.1 gram.
  - c. Impact Resistance at 77 deg. F (25 deg. C), ASTM D3746: No Damage to Roof.
  - d. Pad Size: 36 by 48 inch (914 by 1220 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect existing roofing system that is indicated not to be rehabilitated, and adjacent portions of building and building equipment.
  1. Mask surfaces to be protected. Seal joints subject to infiltration by coating materials.
  2. Limit traffic and material storage to areas of existing roofing membrane that have been protected.
  3. Maintain temporary protection and leave in place until replacement roofing has been completed.
- B. Pollution Control: Comply with environmental regulations of authorities having jurisdiction. Limit spread of dust and debris.
  1. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  2. Remove debris from building roof by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade
- C. Maintain roof drains in functioning condition to ensure roof drainage at end of each workday. Prevent debris from entering or blocking roof drains and conductors. Use roof-drain plugs specifically designed for this purpose. Remove roof-drain plugs at end of each workday, when no work is taking place, or when rain is forecast.
  1. Do not permit water to enter into or under existing membrane roofing system components that are to remain.

### 3.2 ROOFING PREPARATION

#### A. Membrane Surface Preparation:

1. Substrate Cleaning: Clean substrate of contaminants such as dirt, debris, oil, and grease that can affect adhesion of repair material.
  2. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with application of coating. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
  3. Verify adhesion of new products.
- B. Surface Priming: Prime surfaces to receive fluid-applied coating using coating manufacturer's recommended product for surface material. Apply at application rate recommended by manufacturer.
1. Ensure primer does not puddle and substrate has complete coverage.
  2. Allow to cure completely prior to application of coating.
- 3.3 REPLACEMENT FLASHING AND STRIPPING INSTALLATION
- A. Fill in where any roofing is removed with substrate board matching height of the existing roof system. Secure to decking per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Install cant strips at transitions to vertical edges.
  - C. Install modified ply sheet set in urethane adhesive over substrate board (if present), up sides of curbs, and onto the field of the roof 6".
  - D. Install two polyester ply sheets set in rubberized emulsion over the completed ply sheet extending 12" and 24" past the edge of the ply sheet.
  - E. Install skirt metal counterflashing secured at 8" oc.
  - F. Install fully reinforced liquid applied flashing system over all new penetrations.
- 3.4 COATING APPLICATION
- A. Coating, Aluminized: Once ply system has adequately cured, apply coating in number of coats and thickness of application recommended in writing my manufacturer for application.
  - B. Joint Sealant: Apply joint sealant at terminations and penetrations of coatings as required to maintain weathertight application.
- 3.5 WALKWAY INSTALLATION
- A. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads surrounding all new equipment.
    1. Set walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive.
- 3.6 DISPOSAL
- A. Collect demolished and waste materials and place in containers. Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
    1. Storage or sale of demolished items or materials on-site is not permitted.

- B. Transport and legally dispose of demolished materials off Owner's property.

3.7 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove coating that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and reapply coating.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 01 50.72



## SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed equipment support flashing.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
3. Section 07 01 50.72- "Rehabilitation of Built-Up Roofing"

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

### B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

### C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

### B. Special warranty.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim like that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- C. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Exterior visible sheet metal flashings: Semi-gloss acrylic over factory primed sheet metal.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2D (dull, cold rolled).
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.

2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb./100 sq. ft. minimum.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
  - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
  - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
  - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
4. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

- C. Solder:

1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.

- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2-inch-wide and 1/8 inch thick.

- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- J. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain reglets from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.
  - 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 4. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  - 5. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  - 6. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 7. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
  - 8. Finish: mill finish unless noted otherwise.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop): Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Joint Style: Overlapped, 4 inches wide.
  2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick, prefinished.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners weld watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Coping Profile: As indicated on drawings.
  2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.
  3. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch thick, prefinished.

- C. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.

## 2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

#### A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:

1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses.
5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller.
6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

#### B. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lapp joints not less than 4 inches.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

#### A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and welds.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

#### B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  - 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter.
  - 1. Pretin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pretinning where pretinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - 2. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
  - 3. Do not use torches for soldering.
  - 4. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint.
    - a. Fill joint completely.
    - b. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
  - 5. Stainless Steel Soldering:
    - a. Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux.
    - b. Promptly remove acid-flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering.
    - c. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
- H. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
  - 2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
  - 1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.

2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

C. Copings:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.

E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.

1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.

F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING

A. Equipment Support Flashing:

1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

## SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof curbs.
- 2. Pipe and duct support.
- 3. Fall Protection Support.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
- 2. Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for special curbs designed to accommodate seismic and vibration controls.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Supported Load Capacity: Coordinate load capacity with information on Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.052 inch thick.
- E. Construction:
  - 1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  - 2. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
  - 4. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch-thick glass-fiber board insulation.
  - 5. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer under top flange on side of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
  - 6. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.

### 2.3 PIPE AND DUCT SUPPORTS

- A. Adjustable-Height Roller-Bearing Pipe Supports: Polycarbonate pipe stand base, pipe support, and roller housing, with stainless steel threaded rod designed for adjusting support height,

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 72 00 - 2

accommodating up to 18 inch diameter pipe or conduit; with provision for pipe retainer and with manufacturer's support pad or deck plate as recommended for penetration-free installation over roof membrane type; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.

## 2.4 FALL PROTECTION SUPPORT

- A. Acceptable Manufacture: Kee Safety, Inc. 100 Stradtman St.; Buffalo, NY 14206; Web: [www.keesafety.com](http://www.keesafety.com) or Approved Equal.
- B. Weightanka Non-Penetrating, Portable Fall Protection system provide (1) per project site.

## 2.5 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
  - 1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
  - 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C726, nominal density of 3 lb./cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPAC2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Underlayment:
  - 1. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb./100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 72 00 - 3

2. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
3. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
  - G. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
  - H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 22 00 - 4



3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- E. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

## SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

## PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

07 84 13 - 1

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Conform to CBC for fire resistance ratings and surface burning characteristics.
- C. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of materials used.
- D. Coordinating Work: Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that designated through penetration firestop systems are installed per specified requirements.
- E. A manufacturer's direct representative (not distributor or agent) to be on-site during initial installation of firestop systems to train appropriate contractor personnel in proper selection and installation procedures. This will be done per manufacturer's written recommendations published in their literature and drawing details.
- F. Through Penetration Firestopping of Fire Rated Assemblies: UL 1479 or ASTM E814 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.
  - 1. Wall Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1- hour.
  - 2. Floor and Roof Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.
    - a. Floor Penetrations Within Wall Cavities: T-Rating is not required.
- G. Through Penetration Firestopping of Non-Fire Rated Floor and Roof Assemblies: Materials to resist free passage of flame and products of combustion.
  - 1. Noncombustible Penetrating Items: Noncombustible materials for penetrating items connecting maximum of three stories.
  - 2. Penetrating Items: Materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction for penetrating items connecting maximum of two stories.
- H. Fire Resistant Joints in Fire Rated Floor, Roof, and Wall Assemblies: ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for assembly in which joint is installed.
  - 1. Smoke Barrier Joints Air Leakage: Maximum 5 cfm per foot at 0.30 inches water gage pressure differential.
- I. Fire Resistant Joint Between Floor Slabs and Exterior Walls: ASTM E119 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for floor assembly.
- J. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum 25/450 flame spread/smoke developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- K. Proposed firestop materials and methods shall conform to applicable governing codes having local jurisdiction.

## PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

07 84 13 - 2

- L. Firestop Systems do not reestablish the structural integrity of load bearing partitions/assemblies, or support live loads and traffic. Installer shall consult the structural engineer prior to penetrating any load bearing assembly.
- M. For those firestop applications that exist for which no UL tested system is available through a manufacturer, an engineering judgment derived from similar UL system designs or other tests will be submitted to local authorities having jurisdiction for their review and approval prior to installation. Engineering judgment drawings must follow requirements set forth by the International Firestop Council.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:

- 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
    - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
    - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
    - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."

### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  - 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.

## PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

07 84 13 - 3

3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg.
  1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
  1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- D. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
  2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
  - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.
- B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

## SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  - 5. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants. Provide cured samples of materials to be installed in colors selected by the Architect. Printed images will not be accepted in lieu of physical samples.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

### JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 1

- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

## JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 2



- B. VOC Content: Sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following:
  - 1. Architectural sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - 2. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - 3. Sealants and sealant primers for porous substrates shall have a VOC content of 775 g/L or less.
- C. Acceptable Products: See Joint Sealant Schedule.
- D. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Color should match adjacent finishes.

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS (FOODSERVICE AREAS)

- A. Single component silicone sealant chemically acceptable for application to surfaces and equipment that may contact edible products in establishments operating under the USDA federal meat and poultry inspection program

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT, A, G, O.
- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

## 2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 35, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Uses T and NT.
- B. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

## 2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

## JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 3

## 2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.

## 2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any other type, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

## JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 4

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
  - a. Concrete.
  - b. Masonry.
  - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
  - a. Metal.
  - b. Glass.
  - c. Porcelain enamel.
  - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform one test for each kind of sealant and joint substrate
  - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior metal surfaces, including surrounds of windows and skylights.

1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT
2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
  - a. GE Silicones SCS 2000 Series
  - b. Dow Corning 795
  - c. Tremco Spectrem 2

B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior concrete, concrete masonry and plaster walls.

1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT
2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
  - a. Dow Corning 790
  - b. GE Silicones Silpruf
  - c. Tremco Spectrem 1 or Spectrem 3

C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior galvanized steel

1. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 35, T, NT
2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
  - a. Sika Corporation Sika-Flex 1A
  - b. Sonneborn Building Products Div., ChemRex Inc. NP 1

D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior building sealant

1. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex
2. Acceptable products: Provide the following or approved equal.

- a. Pecora Corp "AC 20",
  - b. Sonneborn "Sonolac",
  - c. Tremco "Tremco Acrylic Latex 834"
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Horizontal surfaces, including floor slabs and paving, and under door thresholds.
1. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT
  2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
    - a. Sonneborn SL 2
    - b. Tremco THC 900/901
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Sanitary sealant.
1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT
  2. Acceptable products: Provide the following or approved equal.
    - a. Dow Corning Corp 786 Mildew Resistant
    - b. Sonneborn Sonolalastic Omniplus

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

## SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Glass for windows.
  - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C1036.
- C. CBC: California Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants, in 12-inch lengths.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
  - 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
  - 2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
  - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.



## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Guardian Glass; SunGuard.
  - 2. Pilkington North America.
  - 3. Viracon, Inc.
  - 4. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the CBC and ASTM E1300.
  - 1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II and CBC 2406.
  - 1. Identification of Safety Glazing: Each pane of glazing shall be identified by a manufacturer's designation specifying who applied the designation, the manufacturer or installer and the safety glazing standard as required by CBC 2403.1. The identification shall be acid etched or sand blasted.
  - 2. Impact Test: Comply with CBC 2406.2.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
  - 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
  - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

## 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.
- C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

## 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E2190.
  - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
  - 2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
    - a. Spacer color: Black, unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

## 2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
  - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - 4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- E. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks:
  - 1. Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
  - 2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Spacers:
  - 1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
  - 2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- E. Edge Blocks:

1. Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

## GLAZING

08 80 00 - 7

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- I. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- J. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do meet glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

### 3.8 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type: Clear annealed float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
- B. Glass Type: Clear fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 2. Safety glazing required.

### 3.9 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type: At all Exterior locations, tempered where indicated.
  - 1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
  - 2. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
  - 3. Outdoor Lite: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 4. Interspace Content: Air.
  - 5. Indoor Lite: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
  - 7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
  - 8. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
  - 9. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.39 maximum.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00



## SECTION 09 24 00 - CEMENT PLASTERING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior plasterwork (stucco).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified, 12 by 12 inches, and prepared on rigid backing.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with ASTM C926 requirements.
- B. Exterior Plasterwork:
  - 1. Substrate Temperature: Do not apply stucco system materials to substrates whose temperature are below 40°F or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Inclement Weather: Do not apply stucco system materials during inclement weather, unless appropriate protection is employed.
  - 3. Sunlight Exposure: Avoid, when possible, installation of the stucco system materials in direct sunlight. Application of finishes in direct sunlight in hot weather may adversely affect aesthetics.
  - 4. Do not apply stucco base coats or finishes if ambient temperature falls below 40°F (4°C) within 24 hours of application. Protect stucco materials from uneven and excessive evaporation during dry weather and strong blasts of dry air.

5. Prior to installation, the substrate shall be inspected for surface contamination, or other conditions that may adversely affect the performance of the stucco system materials and shall be free of residual moisture.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Stucco application shall be to vertical substrates or to substrates sloped for positive drainage according to ASTM C926. Substrates sloped for drainage shall have additional protection from weather exposure that might be harmful to material performance.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide cement plaster assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance according to ASTM E119 by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Substrate Conditions:
1. Substrates shall be sound, dry and free of dust, dirt, laitance, efflorescence and other harmful contaminants.
  2. Substrate Dimensional Tolerances: Flat with 1/4 in (6.4 mm) within any 10 ft (3 m) radius.
  3. Maximum deflection of substrate system under positive or negative design loads shall not exceed L/360 of span.
- D. Expansion and Control Joints: Continuous expansion and control joints shall be installed at locations in accordance with ASTM C1063 and ASTM C926.
1. Substrate movement, and expansion and contraction of stucco and adjacent materials shall be considered in design of expansion joints, with proper consideration given to sealant properties, installation conditions, temperature range, coefficients of expansion of materials, joint width to depth ratios, and other material factors. Minimum width of expansion joints shall be as specified by the designer or shown on the project drawings.
  2. In accordance with ASTM C1063, expansion or control joints shall be installed in walls not more than 144 ft<sup>2</sup> (13.4 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, and not more than 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) in area for all non-vertical applications. The distance between joints shall not exceed 18 ft (5.5 m) in either direction or a length-to-width ratio of 2-1/2 to 1.

### 2.2 METAL LATH

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
1. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Flat and Self-furring, 3.4 lb./sq. yd.
  2. Flat-Rib Lath: Rib depth of not more than 1/8-inch, 3.4 lb./sq. yd.
- B. Paper Backing: FS UU-B-790a, Type I, Grade D, Style 2 vapor-permeable paper.
1. Provide paper-backed lath at exterior locations and at locations indicated on Drawings.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 2

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C1063, and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.
- B. Metal Accessories:
1. Foundation Weep Screed: Fabricated from hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G60 zinc coating.
  2. Cornerite: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  3. External- (Outside-) Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  4. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel.
    - a. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Smallnose cornerbead with perforated flanges; use on curved corners.
    - c. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges reinforced by perforated stiffening rib; use on columns and for finishing unit masonry corners.
  5. Casing Beads: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.
  6. Control Joints: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.
  7. Expansion Joints: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with expanded flanges.
  8. Extruded Aluminum Parapet Screed: Mill finish extruded aluminum screed. Basis-of-Design as indicated on drawings.
- C. Soffit vents:
1. Provide continuous soffit vents designed to be used with cement plaster finish.
  2. Basis-of-Design:
    - a. Bugstop Soffit Vent by Stockton Products (Product code SBS).
    - b. Emberstop Soffit Vent by Stockton Products (Product code SES). At all locations except where bugstop is indicated.
  3. Materials: Galvanized steel with aluminum screen.
  4. Size: 4". Height per cement plaster thickness.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing and Finishing Plaster: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, 1/2-inch-long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in cement plaster.
- C. Bonding Compound: ASTM C932.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 3

- D. Fasteners for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: #10 Pan Wafer screws at 7" O.C. maximum; ASTM C1063.
- E. Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, not less than 0.0475-inch diameter unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Seals, Sealants and Bond Breakers: Sealants shall conform to ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. Backer rod shall be closed-cell polyethylene foam.

## 2.5 PLASTER MATERIALS

- A. Factory Blended Portland Cement Plaster Basecoats and Finish: Products as fabricated by California Stucco, La Habra, Shamrock Stucco, Merlex, Omega Stucco, Inc., Expo Stucco, Spec Mix, Quikrete or other manufacturer member of the Stucco Manufacturer's Association (SMA).
  - 1. Material Standards:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C150.
    - b. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C206.
    - c. Sand: ASTM C897.
    - d. Fibers: ASTM C1116.
  - 2. Three Coat Systems:
    - a. Scratch and Brown Coats: Factory blended fiber reinforced plaster and sand mix conforming to ASTM C926, and requiring only the addition of water. Total thickness of coats: 7/8 inch.
    - b. Finish Coat: Factory blended cementitious stucco color coat, integrally colored with fade-resistant pigments. Coat thickness 1/8 inch.
    - c. Color and Texture: As indicated on drawings, or if not indicated, as selected by the architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Water: Clean, cool, potable water.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Substrate Examination: Examine prior to stucco base installation as follows:
  - 1. Substrate shall be of a type approved by stucco system manufacturer and the building code having jurisdiction. Plywood and OSB substrates shall be gapped 1/8 in (3.2 mm) at all edges.
  - 2. Substrate shall be examined for soundness, and other harmful conditions.
  - 3. Substrate shall be free of dust, dirt, laitance, efflorescence, and other harmful contaminants.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 4

4. Substrate construction in accordance with substrate material manufacturer's specifications and applicable building codes.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.

B. Prepare smooth, solid substrates for plaster according to ASTM C926.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 INSTALLING METAL LATH

A. Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C1063.

1. Partition Framing and Vertical Furring: Install flat-diamond-mesh lath.
2. Flat-Ceiling and Horizontal Framing: Install flat-diamond-mesh or flat-rib lath.
3. On Solid Surfaces, Not Otherwise Furred: Install self-furring, diamond-mesh lath.

### 3.5 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

A. Install according to ASTM C1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.

B. Reinforcement for External (Outside) Corners:

1. Install cornerbead at exterior locations.
2. Install cornerbead at interior locations.

C. Control Joints: Locate as approved by Architect for visual effect and as follows:

1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
  - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft.
  - b. Horizontal and Other Nonvertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft.
2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.
5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 5

### 3.6 PLASTER APPLICATION

- A. Mix proprietary products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, including the applicable stucco system product data sheets and application guidelines.
- B. General: Comply with ASTM C926 and manufacturer's application guide.
  - 1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces when measured by a 10-foot straightedge placed on surface.
  - 2. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground unless otherwise indicated. Where casing bead does not terminate plaster at metal frame, cut base coat free from metal frame before plaster sets and groove finish coat at junctures with metal.
  - 3. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.
- C. Walls; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork with 3/4-inch total thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- D. Ceilings; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork and having 1/2-inch total thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- E. Plaster Finish Coats: As selected by the architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Concealed Exterior Plasterwork: Where plaster application is used as a base for adhered finishes, omit finish coat.

### 3.7 PLASTER REPAIRS

- A. Repair or replace work to eliminate cracks, dents, blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work after plastering is complete. Promptly remove plaster from door frames, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

END OF SECTION 09 24 00

## SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products of the following manufactures form the basis for design and quality intended.
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA
  - 2. USG Interiors, Chicago, IL.
  - 3. Or approved equal.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
  - 1. California Building Code (CBC) requirements, Seismic Design Category D, including the following:
    - a. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures," including Section 13, "Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components."
      - 1) Comply with the additional requirements of CBC Section 1617A.1.21.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.



- D. Urea Formaldehyde: Acoustical panel products shall contain no urea formaldehyde. Low-content products (less than 13.5 ppb urea formaldehyde) shall be evaluated on an individual case basis.
- E. Low-Emitting Material: Provide acoustical ceiling panels that are third-party certified to have been tested and passed the following indoor air quality standard:
  - 1. Comply with the volatile organic compound emissions requirements of California Section 01350 as described in CA Department of Health Services Standard Practice CA/DHS/EHLB/R-174.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc;: [www.armstrong.com](http://www.armstrong.com).
    - a. Basis of Design Product other mfgs will be considered if equal products are available.
  - 2. Or approved equal.
  - 3. Provide components of each system from one manufacturer.
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Product General Requirements
  - 1. Repair cut units to match uncut units including tegular edges.
- D. Refer to Schedule at end of section for ACP ceiling tile information.

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design: Heavy-Duty Armstrong Prelude XL Grid System (ICC-ES ESR-1308).
- B. Suspension Systems - General: ASTM C 635; die cut and interlocking components, with stabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.
- C. Color: white.
- D. Edge Trim and Molding: Provide reveal edge "shadow mold" trim where ceiling meets vertical surfaces.; avoid joints in runs under 4'-0" long; miter corners where moldings intersect.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.

- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  - 3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  - 4. Size: Wire diameter enough for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8-inch-wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- G. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M, seismic design requirements, manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
  - 1. DSA IR 25-2.13.
- B. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post installed anchors.
- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.

1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners' level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
  1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and post installed anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf (890 N) of tension; it will also select one of every two post installed anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf (1957 N) of tension.
  2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 passes consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.

- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

### 3.7 SCHEDULE

- A. ACT-1: 24" x 48" Armstrong Cortega 769A or equal to match existing.
  - 1. Locations: At all existing 2x4 ceilings
- B. ACT-2: 12" x 12" Armstrong Fine Fissured 746 or equal to match existing.
  - 1. Locations: At all existing 12x12 ceilings

END OF SECTION 09 51 13

## SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Dunn-Edwards Corporation (a Nippon Paint Holdings Co. Ltd. company).
  - 2. Frazee, Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  - 3. Vista Paint Corporation.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the finish schedule on drawings.

### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

## EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 2

- C. Colors: As indicated on drawings.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
  3. Wood: 15 percent.
  4. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
  5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- D. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

## EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 3



- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Exterior galvanized steel items shall not be painted unless noted otherwise.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide enough difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. All items to be painted shall receive a minimum of primer and two coats of paint, typical.
- B. Steel and Iron Substrates:
  - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1N:

## EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 5

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive MPI #101.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Latex System:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

D. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.1A:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.

E. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates (Semi-Gloss, Acrylic Paint):

1. Latex System:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #10.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

## SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.

3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Dunn-Edwards Corporation (a Nippon Paint Holdings Co. Ltd. company).
  2. Frazee; Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  3. PPG Industries.
  4. Vista Paint Corporation.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the finish schedule on drawings.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
  - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
  - 3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 400 g/L.
  - 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
  - 5. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
  - 6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
  - 7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
  - 8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
  - 9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.
- D. Colors: As indicated in the finish schedule on drawings.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

## INTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 23 - 4

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
  
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide enough difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
  
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
  
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
  
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or another paintable jacket material.
  
  - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or another paintable jacket material.
    - h. Other items as directed by Architect.



3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
  1. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System MPI INT 3.2G:
    - a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
- B. Steel Substrates:
  1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.1S:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based MPI #107.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.3N:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.

D. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 9.2M:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI #50.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
  - a. Topcoat (ceiling, typ.): Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #143.
  - b. Topcoat (walls): Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, eggshell (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

## SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Metal ductwork.
2. Flexible duct connectors.
3. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
4. Dielectric fittings.
5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
6. Sleeves.
7. Escutcheons.
8. Condensate drain piping.

B. Related Sections

1. Division 23 Section "Commissioning for HVAC."

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. **Finished Spaces:** Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. **Exposed, Interior Installations:** Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. **Exposed, Exterior Installations:** Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. **Concealed, Interior Installations:** Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. **Concealed, Exterior Installations:** Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL DUCTS

- A. Fabricate fittings and duct section per SMACNA standards.
- B. Duct Sealant: Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Rectangular to round ductwork sizing criteria:
  - 1. This criteria may be used by the mechanical contractor to resize rectangular ductwork to a round equivalent in cases where space allows contractor to verify all space requirements.
  - 2. Contractor shall not convert any rectangular duct with sound lining to round duct.
  - 3. All ductwork routing and conversions shall be subject to approval by engineer via shop drawing submittal review.

RECTANGULAR DUCT HEIGHT	RECTANGULAR DUCT WIDTH															
	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36
6	8	8	8	10	10	10	12	12	12	12						
8	8	10	10	12	12	12	14	14	14	16	16	16	16	18		
10	8	10	12	12	14	14	16	16	16	18	18	18	18	20	20	20
12	10	12	12	14	14	16	16	18	18	18	20	20	20	22	22	22
14	10	12	14	14	16	16	18	18	20	20	22	22	22	24	24	24
16	10	12	14	16	16	18	20	20	20	22	22	24	24	24	26	26
18	12	14	16	16	18	18	20	20	22	24	24	24	26	26	28	28
20	12	14	16	18	18	20	22	22	24	24	26	26	28	28	28	30
22	12	14	16	18	20	20	22	24	24	26	26	28	28	30	30	32
24	12	16	18	18	20	22	24	24	26	26	28	28	30	30	32	32
26		16	18	20	22	22	24	26	26	28	28	30	32	32	32	34
28		16	18	20	22	24	24	26	28	28	30	32	32	34	34	36
30		16	18	20	22	24	26	28	28	30	32	32	34	34	36	36
32		18	20	22	24	24	26	28	30	30	32	34	34	36	36	38
34			20	22	24	26	28	28	30	32	32	34	36	36	38	38

	36		20	22	24	26	28	30	32	32	34	36	36	38	38	40
--	----	--	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

## 2.2 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
1. Indoor System, (for RTU's with vertical duct connections inside roof curb) Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
    - a. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
    - b. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
    - c. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  2. Outdoor System, (for RTU's with exposed horizontal duct connections) Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
    - a. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd.
    - b. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
    - c. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.3 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Condensate drain piping:
1. Schedule 40 PVC with drainage pattern fittings
  2. Type DWV Copper piping.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solvent Cements for PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

## 2.6 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

## 2.7 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.8 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.

- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 METAL DUCTS

- A. Fabricate fittings as necessary to connect new roof-top packaged air conditioners and adapter curbs (where necessary) to existing ductwork.
- B. Make connections airtight. Provide flexible duct connectors at interface between new equipment and existing ductwork.
- C. Insulate new ductwork connections as necessary to make continuous insulation. Match existing duct insulation type and thickness.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation. Insulation surface burning characteristics not to exceed flame spread of 25 and smoke developed of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs. Sleeves penetrating equipment room floors shall extend 3 inches above floor.
- N. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
  - 1. Submit details proposing fire barrier penetrations for engineer review should any instances be encountered during construction
- O. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- P. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- Q. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:



1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  2. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- B. Rooftop packaged air conditioner condensate drain piping:
  1. Replace all exposed PVC condensate drainpipes with copper. Connect new drain piping to new RTU. Provide deep trap as indicated on drawings.
- C. Package Terminal Air Conditioners (PTAC, at portable classrooms):
  1. Excavate and create new dry well.
  2. Trench horizontal drain piping from PTAC to dry well.
  3. Install new drain piping to discharge at new dry well.
  4. Backfill trenches and repair paving surface to match existing.

### 3.6 COMMISSIONING

- A. The equipment and systems referenced in this section are to be commissioned per Section 230800 – Commissioning of HVAC Systems. The contractor has specific responsibilities for scheduling, coordination, startup, test development, testing and documentation. Coordinate all commissioning activities with the Commissioning Authority.

END OF SECTION 230500

Covina Valley USD District Wide ES HVAC Replacement  
Covina Valley Unified School District  
Covina, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22605-00  
100% Construction Documents

*THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY BLANK*

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Grout.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co;
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC;
  - 3. Approved equal.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Install sleeves in concrete roof slabs, and concrete or CMU walls.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with bottom of slab surfaces.
  2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

#### 3.2 SLEEVE SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Brick or CMU Walls:
    - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 2-1/2: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  2. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 1-1/2: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves Stack-sleeve fittings.
  3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 2-1/2: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

## SECTION 23 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Fastener systems.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe and equipment hangers, supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis stamped and signed by a registered in the state of California professional Structural engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated on drawings and provided by the equipment manufacturer.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and system contents.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

- C. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - b. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/8 to NPS 2 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment off the floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting".
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.



### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/8 to NPS 2, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 2 inches of insulation.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  - 2. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 4. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 5. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.

5. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and, if necessary, to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
  - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
  - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
  - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
  
- K. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
  
- L. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
  
- M. The use of powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments to the existing concrete construction are not allowed.

END OF SECTION 23 0529

## SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Designated Seismic System: An HVAC component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13, and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
- B. CBC: California Building Code.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California owned and regulated medical facilities).

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Include load rating for each wind-force-restraint fitting and assembly.
  - 3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic- and wind-force-restraint component.
  - 4. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 5. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  - 6. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
  2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. For each seismic-restraint and wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, and restrained isolation roof-curb rail that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
    - a. Seismic and Wind-Load Restraint, and Vibration Isolation Base Selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic and wind-load restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
    - b. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - c. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - d. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  2. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Detail Drawing:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
  3. All delegated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  4. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and basis for approval (tests or calculations).
  5. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
  6. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  - 1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active mechanical seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 and AHRI 1270, including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or experience data as permitted by ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  - 2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  - 3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
  - 4. The following HVAC systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:
    - a. Restrained Isolation Roof Curb Rails.
- E. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for HVAC components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.
  - 1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated HVAC device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide manufacturer's written certification for each designated louver, damper, or similar device, stating that it will remain in place and protect opening from penetration of windborne debris and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. The following HVAC systems and components require special certification for high wind performance. Written special certification of resistance to the effects of high wind force and impact damage must be provided by manufacturer:
    - a. Restrained Isolation Roof Curb Rails.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by CALOSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind- load control system.
  - 1. Seismic and Wind-Load Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.
- B. Seismic Design Calculations:
  - 1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.
    - a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated-Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
    - b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
    - c. Building Occupancy Category: Obtain from Structural Engineer.
    - d. Building Risk Category: Obtain from Structural Engineer.
    - e. Building Site Classification: Obtain from Structural Engineer.
  - 2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.

- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Value is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
  - 1) Building Occupancy Category: III
  - 2) Building Risk Category: III
  - 3) Building Site Classification: D
  - 4)  $S_{DS}$  = Spectral Acceleration: 1.071
  - 5)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.0
- b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.
- c. Component Fundamental Period  $T_p$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
  - 1)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Determined by Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 2)  $g$  = Gravitational Acceleration: 32.17 fps<sup>2</sup>.
  - 3)  $K_p$  = Combined Stiffness of Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated-design seismic engineer.

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Data indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
  - b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment.
  - a. Risk Category: III.
  - b.  $V$  = Basic Wind Speed: 105 miles per hour.
  - c.  $K_d$  = Wind Directionality Factor: determine from site, or default to 1.0.
  - d. Exposure Category: C.
  - e.  $K_{zt}$  = Topographic Factor: 1.0.
  - f.  $K_e$  = Ground Elevation Factor: 1.0.

g.  $G = \text{Gust-Effect Factor: } 0.85.$

- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended HVAC components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted HVAC components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential HVAC component will not cause failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.

## 2.2 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  3. Thybar Corporation.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. Upper Frame: To provide continuous support for equipment and to be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces.
- D. Lower Support Assembly: To be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper frame. Lower support assembly to have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and to be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Mount adjustable, restrained-spring isolators on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and provide access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Locate isolators so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with integrity of roof.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic and wind control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.



- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static, wind load, and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION-CONTROL, WIND-LOAD CONTROL, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint, and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Coordinate dimensions of steel equipment rails and bases, concrete inertia bases, and restrained isolation roof-curb rails with requirements of isolated equipment specified in this and other Sections. Where dimensions of these bases are indicated on Drawings, dimensions may require adjustment to accommodate actual isolated equipment.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 5. Test no fewer than four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 8. Measure isolator deflection.
  - 9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  - 10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230548

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Stencils.
  - 6. Warning tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment (For outdoor installation):
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - d. Champion America.
    - e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
    - f. Seton Identification Products.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Stainless steel, 0.025-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: #316 stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment and control panels (For indoor installation):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - d. Champion America.
  - e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - f. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: White.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: #316 stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Brimar Industries, Inc.

3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Champion America.
  5. Marking Sevices Inc.
  6. Stranco, Inc.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Red.
- D. Background Color: Yellow.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: #316 stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Champion America.
  5. Marking Sevices Inc.
  6. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to indoor located pipe without fasteners or adhesive. Provide fasteners for the outdoor located piping
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Champion America.
  5. Marking Services Inc.
  6. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.
- D. Background Color: White.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

## 2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Champion America.
  - d. Marking Services Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Marking Services Inc.
  5. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; mechanical rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as plenums and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and fan coil units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 2. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 3. At access doors and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 4. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 5. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 6. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Condensate Drain Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 2. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-gray background.

### 3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
  - 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  - 2. Yellow: For toilet/kitchen exhaust ducts.
  - 3. Red: For return, air relief and mixed-air ducts.
  - 4. Green: OA ducts
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553



## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Multizone systems.
- 2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
- 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of existing HVAC systems and equipment.
- 4. Sound tests.
- 5. Vibration tests.

- B. Scope of Work:

- 1. Provide measurement and adjustment of replacement new HVAC equipment. Intent is to verify that new equipment performance meets design requirements. Measurements to include, but not be limited to the following:
  - a. Total system airflow.
  - b. Outdoor air flow.
  - c. System sensible cooling capacity.
  - d. System total cooling capacity.
  - e. System heating capacity.
  - f. Electrical voltage.
  - g. Electrical amperage.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan, to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine equipment performance data, including fan curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- G. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- H. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- I. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- J. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- K. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  3. Instrumentation to be used.
  4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.

- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors.
  3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.5 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Motors.
  2. Terminal units.
  3. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
  4. Packaged terminal air conditioners.

### 3.6 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONING UNITS AND PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

4. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.8 SOUND TESTS

A. After systems are balanced and Substantial Completion, measure and record sound levels at two locations – one interior and one outdoors – as designated by the Architect.

B. Instrumentation:

1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level ( $L_{eq}$ ).
3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using one-third octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.

C. Test Procedures:

1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight unweighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment off.
6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight unweighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment operating.

7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.

D. Reporting:

1. Report shall record the following:
  - a. Location.
  - b. System tested.
  - c. dBA reading.
  - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.
2. Plot sound pressure levels on Noise Criteria (NC) worksheet with equipment on and off.

3.9 VIBRATION TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and Substantially Completion, measure and record vibration levels on equipment having motor horsepower equal to or greater than 10.

B. Instrumentation:

1. Use portable, battery-operated, and microprocessor-controlled vibration meter with or without a built-in printer.
2. The meter shall automatically identify engineering units, filter bandwidth, amplitude, and frequency scale values.
3. The meter shall be able to measure machine vibration displacement in mils of deflection, velocity in inches per second, and acceleration in inches per second squared.
4. Verify calibration date is current for vibration meter before taking readings.

C. Test Procedures:

1. To ensure accurate readings, verify that accelerometer has a clean, flat surface and is mounted properly.
2. With the unit running, set up vibration meter in a safe, secure location. Connect transducer to meter with proper cables. Hold magnetic tip of transducer on top of the bearing, and measure unit in mils of deflection. Record measurement, then move transducer to the side of the bearing and record in mils of deflection. Record an axial reading in mils of deflection by holding nonmagnetic, pointed transducer tip on end of shaft.
3. Change vibration meter to velocity (inches per second) measurements. Repeat and record above measurements.
4. Record CPM or rpm.
5. Read each bearing on motor, fan, and pump as required. Track and record vibration levels from rotating component through casing to base.



D. Reporting:

1. Report shall record location and the system tested.
2. Include horizontal-vertical-axial measurements for tests.
3. Verify that vibration limits follow Specifications, or, if not specified, follow the General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart or Vibration Acceleration General Severity Chart from AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance." Acceptable levels of vibration are normally "smooth" to "good."
4. Include in General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart, with conditions plotted.

3.10 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.11 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.12 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate

proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.

- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.13 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

- 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
- 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

- 1. Fan curves.
- 2. Manufacturers' test data.
- 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
- 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

- 1. Title page.
- 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
- 3. Project name.
- 4. Project location.
- 5. Architect's name and address.
- 6. Engineer's name and address.
- 7. Contractor's name and address.
- 8. Report date.
- 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
- 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
- 11. Summary of contents, including the following:
  - a. Indicated versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
- 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.

13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
  - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
  - b. Conditions of filters.
  - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
  - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
  - e. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
  - f. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
  - g. Settings for pressure controller(s).
  - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. Unit identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and unit size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Unit arrangement and class.
  - g. Discharge arrangement.
  - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
  - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg.

- j. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- k. Return airflow in cfm.
- l. Outdoor-air damper position.
- m. Return-air damper position.
- n. Vortex damper position.

E. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft.
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

F. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- G. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
    - a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft.
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- H. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Room or riser served.
    - d. Coil make and size.
    - e. Flowmeter type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.

- e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

I. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.14 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
- B. Owner shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 23 0713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed outside air.
  - 3. Indoor, exposed supply air.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed outside air.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 7. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
  - 8. Fire rated blanket.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers,

attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that meet stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
    - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is UL listed to provide a 2 hour fire rating
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Certain Teed Corp, FlameChek
    - b. Johns Manville: Frietemp

Wrap

- c. Thermal Ceramics: FireMaster Duct Wrap
  - d. 3M Fire Barrier Wrap Product
2. Design Requirements: Provide duct wrap materials and systems which have been manufactured, fabricated, and installed to the following design criteria:
- a. Material: Patented inorganic blanket encapsulated with a scrim-reinforced foil.
  - b. Type and Size: roll 2 inches x area required.
  - c. Weight: 1.83 lb/cu.ft
  - d. Thermal Conductivity at 500°F (ASTM C411, ASTM C518): 0.417 Btu/sq.ft - h - °K
  - e. Surface Burning Characteristics (ASTM E84): Flame spread index 0, smoke developed index 0.
  - f. Combustibility (ASTM E136): Noncombustible.
3. Provide accessory products and materials as follows:
- a. Aluminum Foil Tape:
    - 1) Type and Size: Acceptable to wrap material
  - b. Filament Tape:
    - 1) Width: Minimum 3/4  
inch
4. Bending Material and Banding Clip:
- 1) Material. Carbon steel or stainless steel.
  - 2) Width: Minimum 1/2 inch
  - 3) Thickness: Minimum 0.015 inch
5. Insulation Pins
- 4) Material: Copper-coated steel.
  - 5) Size: Minimum 12 ga.
6. Speed Clips:
- 6) Material: Galvanized steel.
  - 7) Type and Size: Minimum 1-1/2 inches square or 1-1/2 inches diameter round or equivalent sized insulated cup-head pins.
7. Access Door Hardware:
- 8) Type: Threaded rods with 1/4 inch wing nuts and 1/4 inch washers.
  - 9) Material: Galvanized steel
  - 10) Diameter: 1/4 inch
  - 11) Length: 4-1/2 inches – 5 inches

8. Access Door Hardware:
  - 12) Type: Hollow tubing to fit threaded rods
  - 13) Material: Steel
  - 14) Length: 4 inches
9. Fire Barrier Silicone Sealant: Per manufacturer.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

### A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- ### A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- ### A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- ### B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- ### C. Metal Jacket:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and Kraft paper.

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and Kraft paper.
- D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.
    - b. Metro Supply Company: FlexClad 400

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
  - c. Equal.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015-inch-thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
  3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
      - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
  2. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
      - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
    - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel or stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
      - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
    - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.
    - b. Equal.

## 2.10 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024-inch-thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.



- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Fire-stopping" and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.6 FINISHES

- A. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  - 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Vibration-control devices.
  - 6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.9 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- B. Concealed, round return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- D. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- E. Concealed, Type I & II Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating. Provide (2) layers of 1.5" 3M +615 fire rated duct wrap or equal and approved.

- F. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- G. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-4.2
- H. Concealed and exposed outside air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density to achieve a minimum performance value of R-8.2

### 3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:

END OF SECTION 23 0713

## SECTION 230923 – BUILDING MANAGEMENT & DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Building Management System (BMS) integrates building management controls and energy management, and shall be an open system utilizing the same programming and management tools.
- B. The control contractor shall have been an authorized dealer in Southern California for at least (10) years and have a minimum of (30) factory certified technicians on staff prior to the bid. The contractor must furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and service necessary for a complete and operating system, utilizing Direct Digital Controls as shown on the drawings and as described herein. Drawings are diagrammatic only.
- C. The BMS shall be capable of total integration of the facility infrastructure systems with user access by a standard Web Browser over the Internet. This shall include HVAC control, electrical, gas and water metering, energy management, alarm monitoring, security and personnel access control, fire-life safety monitoring, and all trending, reporting and maintenance management functions related to normal building operations all as indicated on the drawings or elsewhere in this specification.
- D. The BMS shall be Carrier.
- E. All central plant & air handler controllers shall be the BACnet Advanced Application Controllers (B-AAC) with onboard HOA switches for all outputs, and the field level controllers shall be the (B-AAC). Other controller brands that operate with BACnet protocol will need to be submitted for review as an approved equal.
- F. Provide the detail design of the system, furnish and install hardware, start-up and commissioning of the system and then warrant the completed system including equipment, appurtenances, and system modifications (if applicable).
- G. Provide a Building Management System (BMS) incorporating Direct Digital Control (DDC) Energy Management, monitoring and control of HVAC equipment. The BMS shall be fully integrated to provide the end users with full control, monitoring and management functions based on a common computer operating system and operating procedures.
- H. Furnish a totally native BACnet-based system, based on a distributed control system in accordance with this specification. All building controllers, application controllers, and all input/output devices shall communicate using the protocols and network standards as defined by ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135–2001, BACnet. In other words, all controllers, including unitary controllers, shall be native BACnet devices.

- I. The BMS shall be listed by the Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (ULI) for use in energy management, (PAZX), critical process (QVAX), security (APOU), and the primary control and monitoring device for smoke control (UUKL) and fire alarm systems (UOJZ). In addition to the above listings, the BMS shall have the ability to integrate all open communications protocol standards including BACnet, LonMark, ODBC, OPC, AdvanceDDE and Modbus. The BMS shall have the ability to simultaneously allow open integration and control of stand-alone systems, HVAC, fire, security, lighting, asset tracking and monitoring CCTV and digital video systems.
- J. Complete temperature control system to be DDC with electronic sensors and electric/electronic actuation of valves and dampers.
- K. Programming, startup, and commissioning of third party systems or equipment such as, packaged pumping systems, VFD's, Chillers, Boilers, etc. shall be provided by the contractor procuring them. The contractor procuring such items is responsible to make the control points ready for BACnet auto discovery.
- L. The system shall include all interconnecting wiring and conduit as required for an operational system under this section of the specification. Wiring and conduit shall be installed as per local codes or Division 26 whichever is more stringent, and a letter indicating method of code compliance which shall be furnished with first shop drawing submittal.
  - 1. Line voltage wiring shall utilize methods and materials complying with the requirements of the Electrical Specifications, state building code, and CEC.
  - 2. Line voltage conduit and wire shall be provided by Division 26 contractor to where BMS requires it.
  - 3. Low voltage wiring shall use methods and materials complying with the requirements of the Electrical Specifications, local building code and CEC.

## 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. The acceptable DDC manufacturer is:
  - 1. Carrier
- B. The Building Control System shall be Carrier
- C. A manufacturer authorized installer shall coordinate all portions of the project and perform final integration.
- D. The Installation Contractor shall be responsible for the complete installation, including the initial data input, system debugging, and initial calibration of system components.
- E. A full-time Project Manager with a minimum of ten (10) years experience with facilities of this size project and complexity shall be assigned to manage both the engineering/design and system installation/start-up phases of the projects. Close coordination and approval from and with the Design Professional is required.

- F. Control system shall be engineered, programmed, and supported completely by representative's local office that must be within 65 miles of project site. The control contractor shall be independent and not part of a Mechanical Contractor's control division.
- G. The design team reserves the right to immediately disqualify contractors and products that do not meet the specific requirements as outlined in this specification.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit complete coordination system documentation including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Equipment location and conduit routing drawings.
  - 2. Point-to-point wiring diagrams.
  - 3. Descriptive literature and specification sheets for hardware and equipment.
  - 4. Operating and maintenance instructions on hardware and equipment.
  - 5. I/O (input/output device) point assignments.
  - 6. Complete schedule and legend listing sensors, readers, etc., indicating its location, make and model number, I/O assignment, etc. Room numbers shall be actual, final building room numbers.
  - 7. Database and software modification documentation indicating sequences of operation, listing of control program additions, flow charts of control program additions, and proposed floor maps with symbols to be programmed into the APM EMS database.
  - 8. Procedures and documents to be used for training, check-out, and commissioning.

### 1.4 FUNCTION

- A. Design and install an integrated building control system including necessary hardware and software to perform the functions intended.
- B. The system shall be fully **integrated Carrier front**-end server and the hardware and software shall be modified to include the extended system.
- C. The system shall provide the following functions:
  - 1. Monitor control and alarm points for alarm and status.
  - 2. Log selected events to the host system database.
  - 3. Upload and download data to the central server database server.
  - 4. Display alarms on the host system terminal including a location plan.
  - 5. Local programming of the system using a portable computer.
  - 6. The building management control decisions shall be made locally by the building controller automatically without the need for any operator intervention. Whenever an alarm or other exceptional situation occurs, the controller shall automatically transmit event data to the APM BMS server via a dedicated connection while simultaneously alerting any remote alarm monitoring station, executing preprogrammed output commands as established by the system design submittals.

- D. The BMS shall perform data acquisition of facility point conditions and shall be capable of uploading transactions and/or events to the APM central database system and include the date, time, location, and nature of the event.
  - 1. The BMS shall utilize distributed control architecture to ensure minimum down time in the event of a single or multiple component failure. The BMS shall be capable of identifying the failed component(s) and bring it to the attention of the BMS central server operator.
  - 2. The BMS shall possess a modular architecture that permits 25% expansion of the system through the addition of expansion boards and memory to a building terminal controller and adding more building control panels, sensors, and readers.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. All components, system software, and parts supplied by the building control system contractor shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for three (1) year from acceptance date.
- B. Labor to repair, reprogram, or replace DDC components under warranty shall be furnished by the building control system contractor at no charge during the warranty period. All corrective software modifications made during warranty periods shall be updated on all user documentation and on user and manufacturer archived software disks. The Contractor shall respond to the Owners request for warranty service within 48 hours during normal business hours.

## PART 2 - NETWORKS

### 2.1 LOCAL AREA NETWORK

- A. The Local Area Network (LAN) shall be a 100 Megabits/sec (Minimum) Ethernet network supporting LON, BACnet, and XML for maximum flexibility for integration of building data with enterprise information systems and providing support for multiple Network Area Controllers (NACs), user workstations and, if specified, a local server.
- B. Local area network minimum physical and media access requirements:
  - 1. Ethernet; IEEE standard 802.3
  - 2. Cable; 100 Base-T, UTP-8 wire, Category 5.
  - 3. Minimum throughput; 100 Mbps.

### 2.2 REMOTE ACCESS



- A. For Local Area Network installations, provide access to the LAN from a remote location, via the Internet. The Owner shall provide a connection to the Internet to enable this access via high speed cable modem, asynchronous digital subscriber line (ADSL) modem, ISDN line, T1 Line or via the customer's Intranet to a corporate server providing access to an Internet Service Provider (ISP). Owner is responsible for monthly ISP charges, if any.

## PART 3 - PRODUCTS

### 3.1 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS DESCRIPTION

- A. The Building Management System (BMS) shall be comprised of a network of interoperable, stand-alone digital controllers, a computer system, graphical user interface software, printers, network devices and other devices as specified herein.
  1. Building Management System to be provided shall perform the following general functions:
    - a. Building management and control.
    - b. Monitoring and control of controllers, remote devices and programmable logic controllers including sensors, actuators, environmental delivery systems (chillers, boilers, room climate control, lighting systems, electrical systems etc.).
    - c. Operator interface to allow general supervision of room controls.
    - d. Data collection and historization.
    - e. Alarm management.
    - f. Trending.
    - g. Report generation.
    - h. Network integration.
  2. Data exchange and integration with a diverse range of other computing and facilities systems using industry standard techniques.
  3. System shall employ all standard features and functions as described in Section 1 to monitor and control building equipment. At a minimum, the following data shall be accessible:
    - a. Space temperature.
    - b. Space temperature set point.
    - c. Occupancy status.
    - d. Operating mode.
    - e. Window status.
    - f. Valve positions.
    - g. Air volume flow.
    - h. Percent terminal load.
    - i. Time schedules.
    - j. Zero energy bands.
    - k. Room name.
    - l. Terminal type e.g. fan coil.

4. In the event of a power failure or disconnection from the network, the controllers shall continue to be fully operational with full time program capability.

B. Web Browser Clients:

1. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard Web browser such as Internet Explorer™, Mozilla FireFox™ or Google Chrome™. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard Web browser) to be resident on the client machine, or manufacture-specific browsers shall not be acceptable.
2. The Web browser software shall run on any operating system and system configuration that is supported by the Web browser. Systems that require specific machine requirements in terms of processor speed, memory, etc., in order to allow the Web browser to function with the BMS, shall not be acceptable.
3. The Web browser shall provide the same view of the system, in terms of graphics, schedules, calendars, logs, etc., and provide the same interface methodology as is provided by the Graphical User Interface Systems that require different views or that require different means of interacting with objects such as schedules, or logs, shall not be permitted.
4. The Web browser client shall support at a minimum, the following functions:
  - a. User log-on identification and password shall be required. If an unauthorized user attempts access, a blank web page shall be displayed. Security using Java authentication and encryption techniques to prevent unauthorized access shall be implemented.
  - b. Graphical screens developed for the GUI shall be the same screens used for the Web browser client. Any animated graphical objects supported by the GUI shall be supported by the Web browser interface.
  - c. HTML programming shall not be required to display system graphics or data on a Web page. HTML editing of the Web page shall be allowed if the user desires a specific look or format.
  - d. Storage of the graphical screens shall be in the APM BMS server without requiring any graphics to be stored on the client machine. Systems that require graphics storage on each client are not acceptable.
  - e. Real-time values displayed on a Web page shall update automatically without requiring a manual “refresh” of the Web page.
  - f. Users shall have administrator-defined access privileges. Depending on the access privileges assigned, the user shall be able to perform the following:
    - 1) Modify common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points in a graphical manner.
      - a) Schedule times will be adjusted using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
      - b) Holidays shall be set by using a graphical calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
      - c) Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.

- d) View logs and charts.
  - e) View and acknowledge alarms.
  - f) Setup and execute SQL queries on log and archive information.
- g. The system shall provide the capability to specify a user's (as determined by the log-on user identification) home page. Provide the ability to limit a specific user to just their defined home page. From the home page, links to other views, or pages in the system shall be possible, if allowed by the system administrator.
  - h. Graphic screens on the Web Browser client shall support hypertext links to other locations on the Internet or on Intranet sites, by specifying the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for the desired link.
- C. On-line Help:
- 1. Provide a context sensitive, on-line help system to assist the operator in operation and editing of the system. On-line help shall be available for all applications and shall provide the relevant data for that particular screen. Additional help information shall be available through the use of hypertext. All system documentation and help files shall be in HTML format.
- D. Security:
- 1. The installed system shall provide secure password access to all features, functions and data contained in the overall BMS.
  - 2. Each operator shall be required to log on to the system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data.
  - 3. System security shall be selectable for each operator. The system administrator shall have the ability to set passwords and security levels for all other operators. Each operator password shall be able to restrict the operators' access for viewing and/or changing each system application, full screen editor, and object.
  - 4. User log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
  - 5. All system security data shall be stored in an encrypted format.
  - 6. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off five minutes following the last keystroke or mouse activity.
- E. System Diagnostics:
- 1. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all workstations, printers, modems, network connections, building management panels, and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator.
  - 2. Provide fully licensed software with no recurring fees for programming of controllers.
- F. Alarm Console:
- 1. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all workstations, printers, modems, network connections, building management panels, and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator.

2. When the Alarm Console is enabled, a separate alarm notification window will supersede all other windows on the desktop and shall not be capable of being minimized or closed by the operator. This window will notify the operator of new alarms and un-acknowledged alarms. Alarm notification windows or banners that can be minimized or closed by the operator shall not be acceptable.

### 3.2 SERVER FUNCTIONS AND HARDWARE

- A. The server supports all Network Area Controller (NAC) connected to the customer's network whether local or remote.
- B. It shall be possible to provide access to all Network Area Controllers via a single connection to the server. In this configuration, each Network Area Controller can be accessed from a remote Graphical User Interface (GUI) or from a standard Web browser (WBI) by connecting to the server.
- C. The server shall provide the following functions, at a minimum:
  1. Global Data Access: The server shall provide complete access to distributed data defined anywhere in the system.
  2. Distributed Control: The server shall provide the ability to execute global control strategies based on control and data objects in any NAC in the network, local or remote.
- D. The server shall include a master clock service for its subsystems and provide time synchronization for all Network Area Controllers (NAC).
- E. The server shall accept time synchronization messages from trusted precision Atomic Clock Internet sites and update its master clock based on this data.
- F. The server shall provide scheduling for all Network Area Controllers and their underlying field control devices.
- G. The server shall provide demand limiting that operates across all Network Area Controllers. The server must be capable of multiple demand programs for sites with multiple meters and or multiple sources of energy. Each demand program shall be capable of supporting separate demand shed lists for effective demand control.
- H. The server shall implement the BACnet Command Prioritization scheme (16 levels) for safe and effective contention resolution of all commands issued to Network Area Controllers. Systems not employing this prioritization shall not be accepted.
- I. Each Network Area Controller supported by the server shall have the ability to archive its log data, alarm data and database to the server, automatically. Archiving options shall be user-defined including archive time and archive frequency.
- J. The server shall provide central alarm management for all Network Area Controllers supported by the server. Alarm management shall include:

1. Routing of alarms to display, printer, email and pagers.
  2. View and acknowledge alarms.
  3. Query alarm logs based on user-defined parameters.
- K. The server shall provide central management of log data for all Network Area Controllers supported by the server. Log data shall include process logs, runtime and event counter logs, audit logs and error logs. Log data management shall include:
1. Viewing and printing log data.
  2. Exporting log data to other software applications.
  3. Query log data based on user-defined parameters.
- L. Connection to the BMS network shall be via an Ethernet network interface card, 100 Mbps.
- M. Graphics:
1. Provide custom dynamic graphics for systems and controlled devices installed in this project.
  2. Provide standardized intelligent dynamic graphics for application specific controllers that will automatically modify itself based on system components installed.
  3. All graphics shall be stored at the APM BMS server.

### 3.3 NETWORK AREA CONTROLLER (NAC)

- A. The Network Area Controller, (NAC) with 1 GB of DDR3 SDRAM and a Quad Core 996 Ghz processor shall be the only acceptable Network Area Controller (NAC).
- General Requirements
1. BACnet Conformance.
    - a. Building Controller shall be approved by the BTL as meeting the BACnet Building Controller requirements.
    - b. Please refer to section 22.2, BACnet Functional Groups, in the BACnet standard, for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above. All proprietary services, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
  2. Building controller shall be of scalable design such that the number of trunks and protocols may be selected to fit the specific requirements of a given project.
  3. The controller shall be capable of panel-mounted on DIN rail and/or mounting screws.
  4. The controller shall be capable of providing global control strategies for the system based on information from any objects in the system, regardless if the object is directly monitored by the building controller module or by another controller.

5. The controller shall be capable of running up to six (6) independent control instances simultaneously. The modification of one control instance does not interrupt the function or runtime others.
6. The software program implementing the DDC strategies shall be completely flexible and user-definable. All software tools necessary for programming shall be provided as part of project software. Any systems utilizing factory pre-programmed global strategies that cannot be modified by field personnel on-site, using a wide area network (WAN) or downloaded through remote communications are not acceptable. Changing global strategies using firmware changes is also unacceptable.
7. Programming shall be object-oriented using control function blocks and support DDC functions. All flowcharts shall be generated and automatically downloaded to controller. Programming tool shall be supplied and be resident on workstation. The same tool shall be used for all controllers.
8. The programming tool shall provide means to graphically view inputs and outputs to each program block in real-time as program is executing. This function may be performed using the operator's workstation or field computer.
9. Controller shall have 6,000 Analog Values and 6,000 Binary Values.
10. Controller IP configuration can be done via a direct USB connect with an operator's workstation or field computer.
11. Controller shall have at a minimum a Quad Core 996Ghz processor to ensure fast processing speeds.
12. Global control algorithms and automated control functions shall execute using a 64-bit processor.
13. Controller shall have a minimum of 1 GB of DDR3 SDRAM on a 533Mhz bus to ensure high speed data recording, large data storage capacity and reliability.
14. Controller shall support two (2) on-board EIA-485 ports capable of supporting various EIA-485 protocols including, but not limited to BACnet MS/TP and Modbus.
  - a. Ports are capable of supporting various EIA-485 protocols including, but not limited to BACnet MS/TP and Modbus.
15. Controller shall support two (2) ports—each of gigabit speed—Ethernet (10/100/1000) ports.
  - a. Ports are capable of supporting various Ethernet protocols including, but not limited to BACnet IP, FOX, and Modbus.
16. All ports shall be capable of having protocol(s) assigned to utilize the port's physical connection.
17. The controller shall have at a minimum four (4) onboard inputs, two (2) universal inputs and two (2) binary inputs.
18. Schedules
  - a. Building controller modules shall provide normal seven-day scheduling, holiday scheduling and event scheduling.
  - b. Each building controller shall support a minimum of 380 BACnet Schedule Objects and 380 BACnet Calendar Objects.
19. Logging Capabilities.

- a. Each building controller shall log as minimum 2,000 objects at 15-minute intervals. Any object in the system (real or calculated) may be logged. Sample time interval shall be adjustable at the operator's workstation.
- b. Logs may be viewed both on-site or off-site using WAN or remote communication.
- c. Building controller shall periodically upload trended data to networked operator's workstation for long-term archiving if desired.
- d. Archived data stored in database format shall be available for use in third-party spreadsheet or database programs.

20. Alarm Generation.

- a. Alarms may be generated within the system for any object change of value or state (either real or calculated). This includes things such as analog object value changes, binary object state changes, and various controller communication failures.
- b. Each alarm may be dialed out as noted elsewhere.
- c. Alarm log shall be provided for alarm viewing. Log may be viewed on-site at the operator's terminal or off-site using remote communications.
- d. Controller must be able to handle up to 2,000 alarm setups stored as BACnet event enrollment objects, with system destination and actions individually configurable.

21. Demand Limiting

- a. Demand limiting of energy shall be a built-in, user-configurable function. Each controller module shall support shedding of up to 1,200 loads using a minimum of two types of shed programs.
- b. Load shedding programs in building controller modules shall operate as defined in section 2.1.J of this specification.

B. BACnet MS/TP

1. BACnet MS/TP LAN must be software-configurable from 9.6 to 115.4Kbps
  - a. Each BACnet MS/TP LAN shall support 32 BACnet devices at a minimum.
  - b. All proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

C. BACnet IP

1. The building controller shall comply with Annex J of the BACnet specification for IP connections. This device shall use Ethernet to connect to the IP internetwork, while using the same Ethernet LAN for non-IP communications to other BACnet devices on the local area network (LAN).
2. Must support interoperability on WANs and local area networks (LANs), and function as a BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD).
3. Each controller shall support at a minimum 128 BBMD entries.
4. BBMD management architecture shall support 3,000 subnets at a minimum.

5. Shall support BACnet Network Address Translation.
6. All proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

D. Expansion Ports

1. Controller shall support two (2) expansion ports.
  - a. Combining the two on-board EIA-458 ports with fully loaded expansion ports, the controller shall support six (6) EIA-485 trunks simultaneously.
2. Expansion cards that mate to the expansion ports shall include:
  - a. Dual port EIA-485 card.

E. Power Supply

1. Input for power shall accept between 17 and 30VAC, 47 and 63Hz.
2. Rechargeable battery for shutdown of controller including storage of all data in flash memory.
3. On-board capacitor will ensure continuous operation of real-time clocks for minimum of 14 days.

F. Controller shall be in compliance with the following:

1. UL 916 for open energy management.
2. FCC Class B.
3. ROHS.
4. IEC 60703.
5. C-Tick Listed.

G. Controller shall operate in the following environmental conditions:

1. -4 to 149 °F (-20 to 65 °C) without optional battery, or 32 to 122 °F (0 to 50 °C) with optional battery.
2. 0 to 95% relative humidity (RH), non-condensing.

H. The NAC shall provide multiple user access to the system and support for ODBC or SQL. A database resident on the NAC shall be an ODBC-compliant database or must provide an ODBC data access mechanism to read and write data stored within it.

I. The NAC shall support standard Web browser access via the Intranet/Internet. It shall support a minimum of 32 simultaneous users.

J. Event Alarm & Notification Actions:

1. The NAC shall provide alarm recognition, storage; routing, management, and analysis to supplement distributed capabilities of equipment or application specific controllers.



2. The NAC shall be able to route any alarm condition to any defined user location whether connected to a local network or remote via dial-up telephone connection, or wide-area network.
3. Alarm generation shall be selectable for annunciation type and acknowledgement requirements including but limited to:
  - a. To alarm.
  - b. Return to normal.
  - c. To fault.
4. Provide for the creation of a minimum of eight of alarm classes for the purpose of routing types and or classes of alarms, i.e.: security, HVAC, Fire, etc.
5. Provide timed (schedule) routing of alarms by class, object, group, or node.
6. Provide alarm generation from binary object "runtime" and /or event counts for equipment maintenance. The user shall be able to reset runtime or event count values with appropriate password control.
7. Control equipment and network failures shall be treated as alarms and annunciated.
8. Alarms shall be annunciated in any of the following manners as defined by the user:
  - a. Screen message text.
  - b. Email of the complete alarm message to multiple recipients. Provide the ability to route and email alarms based on:
    - 1) Day of week.
    - 2) Time of day.
    - 3) Recipient.
  - c. Pagers via paging services that initiate a page on receipt of email message.
  - d. Graphic with flashing alarm object(s).
  - e. Printed message, routed directly to a dedicated alarm printer.
9. The following shall be recorded by the NAC for each alarm (at a minimum):
  - a. Time and date.
  - b. Location (building, floor, zone, office number, etc.).
  - c. Equipment (air handler #, access way, etc.).
  - d. Acknowledge time, date, and user who issued acknowledgement.
  - e. Number of occurrences since last acknowledgement.
10. Alarm actions may be initiated by user defined programmable objects created for that purpose.
11. Defined users shall be given proper access to acknowledge any alarm, or specific types or classes of alarms defined by the user.
12. A log of all alarms shall be maintained by the NAC and/or a server (if configured in the system) and shall be available for review by the user.
13. Provide a "query" feature to allow review of specific alarms by user defined parameters.
14. A separate log for system alerts (controller failures, network failures, etc.) shall be provided and available for review by the user.

15. An Error Log to record invalid property changes or commands shall be provided and available for review by the user.

K. Data Collection & Storage:

1. The NAC shall have the ability to collect data for any property of any object and store this data for future use.
2. The data collection shall be performed by log objects, resident in the NAC that shall have, at a minimum, the following configurable properties:
  - a. Designating the log as interval or deviation.
  - b. For interval logs, the object shall be configured for time of day, day of week and the sample collection interval.
  - c. For deviation logs, the object shall be configured for the deviation of a variable to a fixed value. This value, when reached, will initiate logging of the object.
  - d. For all logs, provide the ability to set the maximum number of data stores for the log and to set whether the log will stop collecting when full, or rollover the data on a first-in, first-out basis.
  - e. Each log shall have the ability to have its data cleared on a time-based event or by a user-defined event or action.
3. All log data shall be stored in a relational database in the NAC and the data shall be accessed from a server (if the system is so configured) or a standard Web browser.
4. All log data, when accessed from a server, shall be capable of being manipulated using standard SQL statements.
5. All log data shall be available to the user in the following data formats:
  - a. HTML.
  - b. XML.
  - c. Plain Text.
  - d. Comma or tab separated values.
6. Systems that do not provide log data in HTML and XML formats at a minimum shall not be acceptable.
7. The NAC shall have the ability to archive its log data either locally (to itself), or remotely to a server or other NAC on the network. Provide the ability to configure the following archiving properties, at a minimum:
  - a. Archive on time of day.
  - b. Archive on user-defined number of data stores in the log (buffer size).
  - c. Archive when log has reached its user-defined capacity of data stores.
  - d. Provide ability to clear logs once archived.

L. Audit Log:

1. Provide and maintain an Audit Log that tracks all activities performed on the NAC. Provide the ability to specify a buffer size for the log and the ability to archive log based on time or when the log has reached its user-defined buffer size. Provide the ability to archive the log locally (to the NAC), to another NAC on the network, or to a server. For each log entry, provide the following data:
  - a. Time and date.
  - b. User ID.
  - c. Change or activity: i.e., Change setpoint, add or delete objects, commands, etc.

M. Database Backup & Storage:

1. The NAC shall have the ability to automatically backup its database. The database shall be backed up based on a user-defined time interval.
2. Copies of the current database and, at the most recently saved database shall be stored in the NAC. The age of the most recently saved database is dependent on the user-defined database save interval.
3. The NAC database shall be stored, at a minimum, in XML format to allow for user viewing and editing, if desired. Other formats are acceptable as well, as long as XML format is supported.

N. Graphical User Interface Software

1. Operating System:
  - a. The GUI shall run on Microsoft Windows.
2. The GUI shall employ browser-like functionality for ease of navigation. It shall include a tree view (similar to Windows Explorer) for quick viewing of, and access to, the hierarchical structure of the database. In addition, menu-pull downs, and toolbars shall employ buttons, commands and navigation to permit the operator to perform tasks with a minimum knowledge of the HVAC Control System and basic computing skills. These shall include, but are not limited to, forward/backward buttons, home button, and a context sensitive locator line (similar to a URL line), that displays the location and the selected object identification.
3. Real-Time Displays. The GUI, shall at a minimum, support the following graphical features and functions:
  - a. Graphic screens shall be developed using any drawing package capable of generating a GIF, BMP, or JPG file format. Use of proprietary graphic file formats shall not be acceptable. In addition to, or in lieu of a graphic background, the GUI shall support the use of scanned pictures.
  - b. Graphic screens shall have the capability to contain objects for text, real-time values, animation, color spectrum objects, logs, graphs, HTML or XML document links, schedule objects, hyperlinks to other URL's, and links to other graphic screens.
  - c. Graphics shall support layering and each graphic object shall be configurable for assignment to a layer. A minimum of six layers shall be supported.

- d. Modifying common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points shall be accomplished in a graphical manner.
    - 1) Schedule times will be adjusted using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
    - 2) Holidays shall be set by using a graphical calendar without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
  - e. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.
  - f. Adjustments to analog objects, such as set points, shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and using a graphical slider to adjust the value. No entry of text shall be required.
4. System Configuration. At a minimum, the GUI shall permit the operator to perform the following tasks, with proper password access:
- a. Create, delete or modify control strategies.
  - b. Add/delete objects to the system.
  - c. Tune control loops through the adjustment of control loop parameters.
  - d. Enable or disable control strategies.
  - e. Generate hard copy records or control strategies on a printer.
  - f. Select points to be alarmed and define the alarm state.
  - g. Select points to be trended over a period of time and initiate the recording of values automatically.

### 3.4 SYSTEM PROGRAMMING

- A. The Graphical User Interface software (GUI) shall provide the ability to perform system programming and graphic display engineering as part of a complete software package. Access to the programming functions and features of the GUI shall be through password access as assigned by the system administrator.
- B. A library of control, application, and graphic objects shall be provided to enable the creation of all applications and user interface screens. Applications are to be created by selecting the desired control objects from the library, dragging or pasting them on the screen, and linking them together using a built in graphical connection tool. Completed applications may be stored in the library for future use. Graphical User Interface screens shall be created in the same fashion. Data for the user displays is obtained by graphically linking the user display objects to the application objects to provide “real-time” data updates. Any real-time data value or object property may be connected to display its current value on a user display. Systems requiring separate software tools or processes to create applications and user interface displays shall not be acceptable.
- C. Programming Methods:

1. Provide the capability to copy objects from the supplied libraries, or from a user-defined library to the user's application. Objects shall be linked by a graphical linking scheme by dragging a link from one object to another. Object links will support one-to-one, many-to-one, or one-to-many relationships. Linked objects shall maintain their connections to other objects regardless of where they are positioned on the page and shall show link identification for links to objects on other pages for easy identification. Links will vary in color depending on the type of link; i.e., internal, external, hardware, etc.
2. Configuration of each object will be done through the object's property sheet using fill-in the blank fields, list boxes, and selection buttons. Use of custom programming, scripting language, or a manufacturer-specific procedural language for configuration will not be accepted.
3. All programming shall be graphical and utilize a non proprietary tool like Microsoft Visio. Text based programming is not acceptable.
4. The software shall provide the ability to view the logic in a monitor mode. When on-line, the monitor mode shall provide the ability to view the logic in real time for easy diagnosis of the logic execution. When off-line (debug), the monitor mode shall allow the user to set values to inputs and monitor the logic for diagnosing execution before it is applied to the system.
5. All programming shall be done in real-time. Systems requiring the uploading, editing, and downloading of database objects shall not be allowed.
6. The system shall support object duplication within a customer's database. An application, once configured, can be copied and pasted for easy re-use and duplication. All links, other than to the hardware, shall be maintained during duplication.

D. Scheduling:

1. Provide the capability to schedule each object or group of objects in the controller system. Controllers shall have a minimum of 20 schedules. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
  - a. Daily schedule: Provide daily schedules that are the basic building blocks for any of the following time schedules. Using daily schedules, user shall enter the switching times with the desired set points and switching conditions for the data-points. When preparing a daily schedule and assigning the name, there is initially no specific relationship to a particular day in the week. The modular structure of the time schedule shall make it possible for the user to establish various different daily schedules, keep them in a library, and include them in the weekly schedule. User shall be free to extend the list of daily schedules to meet his/her special requirements. The repeated use of the same daily schedule shall also be possible (for example, the same daily schedule can apply from Monday to Friday in the weekly schedule). Changes in a daily schedule shall be immediately effective in the weekly and annual schedules, as well as in the special day list.
  - b. Weekly schedule: Provide a separate weekly schedule that shall be generated for each time schedule. Weekly schedule defines which daily schedule is to be used for which weekday. A daily schedule is assigned to each day of the week (Monday to Sunday). It shall also be possible to assign the same daily schedule to several weekdays. Weekly schedule, as defined, shall automatically be copied for each week in the annual schedule. If a change is made to a weekday in a weekly schedule, this change shall affect the weekday in every week of the year. If a daily

schedule is entered directly in the annual schedule, this daily schedule shall have priority over the daily schedule from the weekly schedule. Definition of a weekly schedule forms the basis of the annual schedule.

- c. Annual schedule: Provide an annual schedule that is structured like a calendar and consists of successive weekly schedules. It provides an overview of which daily schedules are valid on which calendar days. If the daily schedule in a weekly schedule does not apply on a particular calendar date, another daily schedule can be entered for it directly in the annual schedule. Annual schedule starts on the current day. Each day, the time frame shifts one day. Days added at the end shall automatically be assigned the daily schedule from the weekly schedule. Entries in the annual schedule shall therefore be made only if a daily schedule differing from the one selected is to be used. An undefined daily schedule to be inserted in the annual schedule can be defined in the daily schedule.
  - d. Holiday schedule: Provide one holiday day list that shall exist per time schedule. List shall make a number of holidays and special days available to which a daily schedule can be assigned. This daily schedule will then apply to this holiday or special day every year. The date of floating holidays shall be calculated automatically by the controller. If no daily schedule is entered on certain holidays, the special day list is not taken into account on this day. Provide capability for 24 holidays and special days.
- E. Digital alarms: Each digital object shall be set to alarm based on the operator-specified state. Provide the capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
  - F. Analog alarms: Provide analog objects with two maximum limits (limit max 1 and limit max 2), and two minimum limits (limit min 1 and limit min 2).
  - G. Totalizer alarms: Each totalizer object shall be set to alarm based on a pulse input signal interval that, if exceeded, triggers an alarm signal. Alarm signal text shall be permanently programmed and needs no input from the user.
  - H. Alarms shall be selectable as critical or non-critical. Critical alarms shall be transmitted as high priority.
  - I. System alarms: Operating errors that occur in a control unit or during communication with other controllers shall be recognized and displayed by the computer module. These alarm signals can relate, for example, to a defective module, the need to change the buffer battery (data protection), or the presence of one digital output module too many (maximum 10). These alarm signal texts are preprogrammed. They are always critical alarms.
  - J. Demand limiting:
    - 1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building power consumption from signals generated by a pulse generator (provided by others) mounted at the building power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer attached to the building feeder lines.

2. Demand-limiting program shall predict the probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding the demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates the demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
  3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
    - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set point up by 1 degree C (2 degrees F).
    - b. Reset space temperature set points up by 1 degree C (2 degrees F).
    - c. De-energize equipment based upon priority.
  4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which the local power company computes demand charges.
  5. Provide demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by the system or for the total of any combination of meters.
  6. Provide the means for an operator to make the following changes on-line:
    - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
    - b. Changes in demand intervals.
    - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
    - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
    - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
    - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
    - g. Shed and restore priority.
  7. Provide the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, and monthly basis:
    - a. Total electric consumption.
    - b. Peak demand.
    - c. Date and time of peak demand.
    - d. Daily peak demand.
- K. Sequencing: Provide application software based upon the sequences of operation specified to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and pumps.
- L. EPID control: An EPID (enhanced proportional-integral-derivative) algorithm with additional features shall be supplied. Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that is used to position an output or stage a series of outputs. Enhanced features shall include a built-in start-up ramp, direct-reverse action selection, integral recalculation to prevent windup below minimum and above maximum, and an auxiliary input for limit applications and integral reset. Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be user-selectable.
- M. Staggered start: This application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. The order in which equipment or groups of equipment is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be user-selectable.

- N. Energy calculations:
1. Provide software to allow instantaneous power (e.g., kW) or flow rates (e.g., gpm) to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
  2. Provide an algorithm that calculates a sliding window average (e.g., rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be user-specified (e.g., 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes).
  3. Provide an algorithm that calculates a fixed window average. A digital input signal will define the start of the window period (e.g., signal from utility meter) to synchronize the fixed window average with that used by the utility.
- O. Anti-short cycling: Digital output objects shall be protected from short cycling. This feature shall allow minimum on time and off time to be selected.
- P. On and off control with differential: Provide an algorithm that allows a digital output to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point. Algorithm shall be direct acting or reverse acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- Q. Duty cycle: Provide software to switch HVAC systems on and off at variable intervals to save energy while maintaining room conditions. Program shall have adjustable internal parameters for room comfort range, maximum off times, minimum off times, and motor cycle times.
- R. Economizer: Provide software that determines the most economical system operation for full and partial air conditioning systems. For a full air conditioning plant, it calculates the control signal for energy recovery on the basis of actual outdoor air enthalpy, return air enthalpy, and demand. In partial air conditioning systems, this control icon shall be used for heat recovery with temperature comparison. Economizer program shall make decisions based on the following information: Is the system a full or partial air conditioning system. A full system has temperature and humidity control. A partial system has temperature control only. Is there mixed air damper operation or heat and humidity recovery using a thermal wheel? Which has the higher energy cost: heating or cooling?
- S. Night purge: Provide a program that outputs an on and off value to start and stop ventilation and air conditioning systems to precondition rooms when cold outdoor air is available during non-working hours (usually, nighttime). To switch on the air conditioning as late as possible, this function shall permit room temperature to drop below room temperature set point during night cooling. Night purge shall achieve this action by resetting the room temperature set point downward. Minimum outdoor air temperature shall be limited to prevent damage from excessively cold outdoor air.
- T. Optimum start and stop: Provide a software program that calculates optimized values for starting and stopping the heating plant. Optimized start-stop function shall consider the residual heat in a building to avoid unnecessary heating operation. Required room conditions are met at all times. Optimum start and stop program calculates required flow temperature with an integrated heating curve. Two techniques shall be available: optimization without room sensor or optimization with room sensor. Optimization without room sensor uses outdoor air temperature to determine optimum start (the preheat point). Optimization with room sensor uses room control and needs a time constant (time program) and dead time to calculate the preheat point.



- U. Zero energy band: Provide a software program that determines set points to maintain a predetermined comfort band divided into heating, cooling, and zero energy bands. ZEB subdivides a predetermined comfort band into: Heating band zero energy band cooling band. Zero energy band represents a temperature range in which the room temperature may vary without a need for heating or cooling.
- V. Run-time totalization: Provide software to totalize run times for all digital input objects. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by the operator.
  - 1. Data references like text descriptors, historical data, alarm buffer, engineering units, engineering characteristics etc. must be resident inside the building controller.
  - 2. Provide at minimum 1000 BACnet ® Objects, of which a minimum 300 physical I/Os must be possible.

### 3.5 EXPANDABLE CONTROLLERS

#### A. General:

- 1. The NAC shall be able to run at least one dedicated control instance as an Expandable Application Controller and support multiple expansion modules.
- 2. Expandable Application Controller shall be capable of providing control strategies for the system based on information from any or all connected inputs. The program that implements these strategies shall be completely flexible and user definable. Any systems utilizing factory pre-programmed global strategies that cannot be modified by field personnel on-site via simple download are not acceptable. Changing global strategies via firmware changes is also unacceptable. Program execution of controller shall be a minimum of once per second.
- 3. Programming shall be object-oriented using control program blocks. Controller shall support a minimum of 500 Analog Values and 500 Binary Values. Each and every analog and binary value shall support standard BACnet priority arrays. Programming tool shall be provided with system and shall be the same tool that is used to program the Building Controller. All flowcharts shall be generated and automatically downloaded to controller. No re-entry of database information shall be necessary.
- 4. Provide means to graphically view inputs and outputs to each program block in real-time as program is executing. This function may be performed via the operator's terminal or field computer.
- 5. Controller shall have adequate data storage to ensure high performance and data reliability. Battery shall retain static RAM memory and real-time clock functions for a minimum of 1.5 years (cumulative). Battery shall be a field-replaceable (non-rechargeable) lithium type. Unused battery life shall be 10 years.
- 6. The onboard, battery-backed real time clock must support schedule operations and trend logs.
- 7. Global control algorithms and automated control functions should execute via 32-bit processor.
- 8. Controller shall include both on-board 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Ethernet BACnet communication over twisted pair cable (UTP) and shall include BACnet IP communication. In addition, controller shall include BACnet PTP connection port.

9. The NAC shall be able to host up to 8 expansion modules with various I/O combinations. These inputs and outputs shall include universal 12-bit inputs, binary triac outputs, and 8-bit switch selectable analog outputs (0-10V or 0-20 mA). Inputs shall support 3K and 10K thermistors, 0-5VDC, 0-10VDC, 4-20mA, dry contacts and pulse inputs directly.
10. All outputs must have onboard Hand-Off-Auto switches and a status indicator light. HOA switch position shall be monitored. Each analog output shall include a potentiometer for manually adjusting the output when the HOA switch is in the Hand position.
11. The position of each and every HOA switch shall be available system wide as a BACnet object. Expandable Application Controller shall provide up to 176 discreet inputs/outputs per base unit.

B. BACnet Conformance:

1. This controller shall as a minimum support Point-to-Point (PTP), MS/TP and Ethernet BACnet LAN types. It shall communicate directly via these BACnet LANs as a native BACnet device and shall support simultaneous routing functions between all supported LAN types. Building controller shall be a BACnet conformance class 3 device and support all BACnet services necessary to provide the following BACnet functional groups:
  - a. Clock Functional Group.
  - b. Files Functional Group.
  - c. Reinitialize Functional Group.
  - d. Device Communications Functional Group.
  - e. Event Initiation Functional Group.
2. Please refer to section 22.2, BACnet Functional Groups, in the BACnet standard for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
3. Standard BACnet object types supported shall include as a minimum: Analog Input, Binary Input, Analog Output, Binary Output, Analog Value, Binary Value, Device, File, Group, Event Enrollment, Notification Class, Program and Schedule object types. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
4. The Controller shall comply with Annex J of the BACnet specification for IP connections. This device shall use Ethernet to connect to the IP internetwork, while using the same Ethernet LAN for non-IP communications to other BACnet devices on the LAN. Must support interoperability on wide area networks (WANs) and local area networks (LANs) and function as a BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD).

C. Schedules: Each expandable application controller shall support a minimum of 50 BACnet Schedule Objects.

D. Logging Capabilities:

1. Each controller shall support a minimum of 200 trend logs. Any object in the system (real or calculated) may be logged. Sample time interval shall be adjustable at the operator's workstation.

2. Controller shall periodically upload trended data to system server for long term archiving if desired.
3. Archived data stored in database format shall be available for use in third-party spreadsheet or database programs

E. Alarm Generation:

1. Alarms may be generated within the system for any object change of value or state either real or calculated. This includes things such as analog object value changes, binary object state changes, and various controller communication failures.
2. Alarm log shall be provided for alarm viewing. Log may be viewed on-site at the operator's terminal or off-site via remote communications
3. Controller must be able to handle up to 200 alarm setups stored as BACnet event enrollment objects – system destination and actions individually configurable.

3.6 TERMINAL UNIT APPLICATION CONTROLLERS (HEAT PUMPS, PACKAGED AC UNITS)

- A. Provide one BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) that is a native BACnet application controller for each piece of unitary mechanical equipment that adequately covers all objects listed in object list for unit. All controllers shall interface to building controller via MS/TP LAN using BACnet protocol. No gateways shall be used. Controllers shall include input, output and self-contained logic program as needed for complete control of unit.

B. BACnet Conformance:

1. Application controllers shall as a minimum support MS/TP BACnet LAN types. They shall communicate directly via this BACnet LAN at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4 and 76.8 Kbps, as a native BACnet device. Application controllers shall be of BACnet conformance class 3 and support all BACnet services necessary to provide the following BACnet functional groups:
  - a. Files Functional Group.
  - b. Reinitialize Functional Group.
  - c. Device Communications Functional Group.
2. Please refer to Section 22.2, BACnet Functional Groups in the BACnet standard for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above. All proprietary services, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
3. Standard BACnet object types supported shall include as a minimum—Analog Input, Analog Output, Analog Value, Binary Input, Binary Output, Binary Value, Device, File and Program Object Types. All proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. All necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

- C. Application controllers shall include universal inputs with 10-bit resolution that can accept 3K and 10K thermistors, 0–5 VDC, 4–20 mA, dry contact signals and a minimum of 3 pulse inputs. Any input on controller may be either analog or digital. Controller shall also include support and modifiable programming for interface to intelligent room sensor. Controller shall include binary outputs on board with analog outputs as needed.
- D. All program sequences shall be stored on board controller in EEPROM. No batteries shall be needed to retain logic program. All program sequences shall be executed by controller 10 times per second and shall be capable of multiple PID loops for control of multiple devices. Programming of application controller shall be completely modifiable in the field over installed BACnet LANs or remotely via modem interface. Operator shall program logic sequences by graphically moving function blocks on screen and tying blocks together on screen. Application controller shall be programmed using same programming tools as building controller and as described in operator workstation section. All programming tools shall be provided and installed as part of system.
- E. Application controller shall include support for the Microset 4 intelligent room sensor. Display on the room sensor shall be programmable at controller and include an operating mode and a field service mode. All button functions and display data shall be programmable to show specific controller data in each mode based on which button is pressed on the sensor. See intelligent room sensor section and sequence of operation for specific display requirements at intelligent room sensor.

### 3.7 INPUT AND OUTPUT INTERFACE

- A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into the system through general purpose, custom application, unitary controllers or distributed I/O devices.
- B. Input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground will cause no damage to controller. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no damage to controller. Inputs and outputs shall be arranged on interchangeable modules or circuit boards to allow the replacement of a damaged module or board without replacing the entire controller.
- C. Digital inputs shall allow the monitoring of on and off signals from remote devices. Digital inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices, and shall be protected against the effects of contact bounce and noise. Digital inputs shall sense dry contact closure without external power other than that provided by the controller being applied.
- D. Totalizer input points: This type of point shall conform to all requirements of digital input points, and also accept up to 15 pulses per second for pulse accumulation.

- E. Analog inputs for GPCs shall be minimum 12-bit resolution and allow the monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 VDC), current (0 to 20 mA), negative temperature coefficient (NTC), and resistance to detector (RTD). Analog inputs shall be compatible with and field-configurable to commonly available sensing devices. To prevent thermal loading, RTDs and thermistors shall be scanned rather than have continuous power applied.
- F. Inputs shall be electrically isolated from their associated field points.
- G. Digital outputs shall provide for on and off operation, or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- H. Analog outputs shall be minimum 8-bit resolution and provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0 to 10 VDC or a 4 to 20 mA signal as required to provide proper control of the output device. Analog outputs on general purpose or custom application controllers shall have status lights and a two-position Auto and Manual switch and manually adjustable potentiometer with feedback for manual operation. Analog outputs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
- I. Tri-State outputs: Provide tri-state outputs (two coordinated digital outputs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback. Use of three-point floating devices shall be limited to zone control and terminal unit control applications (VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, zone dampers, radiation). Control algorithms shall run the zone actuator to one end of its stroke every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.
- J. System point capacity: System size shall be expandable to at least two times the number of hardware and software input and output points required for this project or 20,000 points, whichever is greater. Additional controllers (along with associated devices and wiring) shall be all that is necessary to achieve this capacity requirement. Operator interfaces installed for this project shall not require any hardware additions or software revisions to expand the system.
- K. Spare I/O Points: At each controller location, provide spare points equal to 15 percent of total I/O points at that location or 2 AI, 2 AO, 2 DO and 2 DI, whichever is greater.

### 3.8 POWER SUPPIES AND LINE FILTERING

- A. Control transformers shall be UL and CSA Listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service per CEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity
  - 1. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0 percent line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50 percent load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand a 150 percent current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.

- a. Unit shall operate between 32 degrees F and +120 degrees F. EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MIL-STD 810C for shock and vibration.
- b. Line voltage units shall be UL Recognized and CSA approved.

B. Power line filtering:

1. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers, either internally or as an external component. Surge protection shall have the following at a minimum:
  - a. Dielectric strength of 1,000 volts minimum.
  - b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less.
  - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater.
  - d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or better at 40 Hz to 100 Hz.

### 3.9 FIELD CONTROL DEVICES

A. Temperature Sensors:

1. All temperature sensors to be solid state electronic, factory-calibrated to within 0.5°F, totally interchangeable with housing appropriate for application.
2. Wall sensors to be installed as indicated on drawings. Mount 48 inches about finished floor.
3. Duct sensors to be installed such that the sensing element is in the main air stream.
4. Immersion sensors to be installed in wells provided by control contractor, but installed by mechanical contractor. Immersion wells shall be filled with thermal compound before installation of immersion sensors.
5. Outside air sensors shall be installed away from exhaust or relief vents, not in an outside air intake and in a location that is in the shade most of the day.

B. Intelligent Room Sensor with LCD Readout:

1. The intelligent room sensor shall monitor and display both temperature and humidity, and shall be a communicating, intelligent thermostat with a microprocessor, with a glass touch screen interface.
2. The BMS will alarm the OMJV team if humidity readings are outside of 30% RH to 60% RH.
3. Sensor shall contain a backlit touchscreen LCD digital display along with temperature & humidity sensor. Controller shall function as room control unit, and shall allow occupant to raise and lower setpoint, and activate terminal unit for override use—all within limits as programmed by building operator. Sensor shall also allow service technician access to hidden functions as described in sequence of operation.
4. The Intelligent Room Sensor shall simultaneously display room setpoint, room temperature, outside temperature, humidity, and fan status (if applicable) at each controller. This unit shall be programmable, allowing site developers the flexibility to configure the display to match their application. The site developer should be able to

program the unit to display time-of-day, room humidity and outdoor humidity. Unit must have the capability to show temperatures in Fahrenheit or Centigrade.

5. Override time may be set and viewed in half-hour increments. Override time count down shall be automatic, but may be reset to zero by occupant from the sensor. Time remaining shall be displayed. Display shall show the word "OFF" in unoccupied mode unless a function button is pressed.
6. See sequence of operation for specific operation of LCD displays and function keys in field service mode and in normal occupant mode. Provide intelligent room sensors as specified in point list.
7. Field service mode shall be customizable to fit different applications. If intelligent room sensor is connected to terminal controller, terminal box shall be balanced and all air flow parameters shall be viewed and set from the intelligent room sensor with no computer or other field service tool needed.

C. Wall Sensor:

1. All thermostats shall monitor and display both temperature and humidity, and shall be a communicating, intelligent thermostat with a microprocessor, with a glass touch screen interface.
2. BMS will alarm if humidity readings are outside of 30% RH to 60% RH.
3. Standard wall sensor shall use solid-state sensor identical to intelligent room sensor and shall be packaged in aesthetically pleasing enclosure.
4. Sensor shall provide override function, warmer/cooler lever for set point adjustment and port for plug-in of Field Service Tool for field adjustments. Override time shall be stored in controller and be adjustable on a zone-by-zone basis.
5. Adjustment range for warmer/cooler lever shall also be stored in EEPROM on controller.
6. All programmable variables shall be available to Field Service Tool through wall sensor port.

D. Relays:

1. Control relays shall be UL Listed plug-in type. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage suitable for application. Honeywell R4228/8228.
2. Time delay relays shall be UL Listed solid-state plug-in type with adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable \*200% (minimum) from set point shown on plans. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure when not installed in local control panel.

E. Voltage Transformers:

1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL and CSA recognized, 600 VAC rated, complete with built-in fuse protection.
2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of +40 to +130 degrees F and shall provide \*0.5 percent accuracy at 24 VAC and a 5 VA load.
3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic material.
4. Transmitters

- a. Transmitter shall operate on 24 VAC. Transmitter shall not require an isolated power source.
  - b. Operating temperature range for the transmitter shall be -20° F to 120° F. Protect transmitter from weather and water.
  - c. Communication with host controls using one of the following interface options:
    - 1) Linear analog output signal: Field selectable, fuse protected and isolated, 0-10VDC and 4-20mA (4-wire).
    - 2) RS-485: Field selectable BACnet-MS/TP, ModBus-RTU.
5. Measuring device shall be UL listed as an entire assembly.
  6. Contractor shall review and approve placement and operating airflow rates for each measurement location indicated on the plans. A written report shall be submitted to the engineer if any measurement locations do not meet the manufacturer's placement requirements.

F. Local Control Panels:

1. Indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with hinged door or key-lock latch, and removable sub-panels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and sub-panels.
2. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices pre-wired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL Listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
3. Provide on and off power switch with over-current protection for control power sources to each local panel.
4. Build control panels in accordance with UL508A standards and label with separate UL label numbers.

G. Current Sensing Relay.

1. Current Sensing Relays: Provide solid-state sensor, which operates when the current level sensed by the internal current transformer, exceeds the adjustable trip point. The internal circuits shall be totally powered by induction from the line being monitored. The relay shall have zero off state leakage in the solid-state output while switching both AC and DC circuits. The monitored AC circuits shall be 1 to 150 amps. Veris, Model H908, or approved equal.

H. Network Connection Tool.

1. Network connection tool shall allow technician to connect a laptop to any MS/TP network or at any MS/TP device and view and modify all information throughout the entire BACnet network. Laptop connection to tool shall be through Ethernet or PTP.
2. Provide quick connect to MS/TP LAN at each controller. Tool shall be able to adjust to all MS/TP baud rates specified in the BACnet standard.



### 3.10 ACTUATORS

- A. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Belimo.
- C. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
- D. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
- E. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
- F. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
- G. Power Requirements (non-Spring Return): 24 V ac.
- H. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
- I. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
- J. Temperature Rating: 40 to 104 deg F
- K. Standard spring ranges are 2 to 5 psig, 3 to 10 psig, and 8 to 11 psig.
- L. Not pulse actuated.

## PART 4 - EXECUTION

### 4.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Power conduit shall be separated from control and signal conduits by a minimum of 3 inches.
- B. EMS equipment shall be located such that it is accessible for service while maintaining clearances or walkways required around other equipment or obstacles.
- C. Control elements located in outdoor installations shall be weatherproof.
- D. Splices in shielded cables shall not be permitted. Terminations of shields and conductors shall be done in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Cabling and wiring within panels shall be harnessed with tie wraps and secured in a neat and orderly fashion.

- F. Cable runs shall be kept as short as possible, allowing extra length for making connections to termination points.
- G. Each cable or individual conductor shall be labeled with a unique tag for quick identification during checkout, testing, and troubleshooting. Each component shall be permanently labeled with the device name and at each terminal point per section.

#### 4.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Project plans shall be thoroughly examined for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the Architect and Engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. Contractor shall inspect the site to verify that equipment may be installed as shown. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the Engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. Contractor shall examine the drawings and specifications for other parts of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the plans and contractor's work, and the plans and the work of others—contractor shall report these discrepancies to the Engineer and shall obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the contractor's work with the work of others. Changes in the work covered by this Specification made necessary by the failure or neglect of contractor to report such discrepancies shall be made by—and at the expense of—this contractor.

#### 4.3 PROTECTION

- A. Contractor shall protect work and material from damage from its work or employees, and be liable for all damages thus caused.
- B. Contractor shall be responsible for its work and equipment until finally inspected, tested, and accepted. Contractor shall protect material that is not immediately installed. Contractor shall close open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects.

#### 4.4 COORDINATION

- A. Site:
  - 1. Where mechanical work will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with, work of other trades, contractor shall assist in working out space conditions to make a satisfactory adjustment. If contractor installs its work before coordinating with other trades, so as to cause any interference with work of other trades, contractor shall make necessary changes in its work to correct the condition without extra charge.
  - 2. Coordinate and schedule work with all other work in same area, or with work that is dependent upon other work, to facilitate mutual progress.

- B. Submittals: Refer to Submittals Article in Part 1 of this Specification for requirements.
- C. Test and balance:
  - 1. Contractor shall furnish all tools necessary to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
  - 2. Contractor shall provide training in the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of four hours.
  - 3. In addition, the contractor shall provide a qualified technician to assist in test and balance process, until the first 20 terminal units are balanced.
  - 4. Tools used during the test and balance process will be returned at completion of the testing and balancing.
- D. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions: Other sections and divisions of this Specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to control system specified in this section. Controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the procuring contractor as follows:
  - 1. Communication media and equipment shall be provided as specified in Part 2: Communication of this Specification.
  - 2. Each contractor supplying a control product is responsible for the configuration, programming, startup, and testing of that product to meet the sequences of operation described in this section.
  - 3. The procuring contractor shall coordinate and resolve any incompatibilities that arise between the control products provided under this section and those provided under other sections or divisions of this Specification.
  - 4. The procuring contractor is responsible for providing all controls as referenced in the related sections this work of contract documents.
  - 5. The procuring contractor is responsible for the interface of control products provided by multiple suppliers, as referenced in the related sections this work of contract documents.

#### 4.5 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring raceway parallel to the building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by Chapter 1, Article 100, Part A of the California Electric Code (CEC).
- D. Verify wiring integrity to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and grounds.
- E. Equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility, and be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices.

#### 4.6 WIRING

- A. Control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and Division 26 of this specification. Where requirements of this section differ with those in Division 26, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. CEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL Listed in approved raceway per CEC and Division 26 requirements.
- C. Low-voltage wiring shall meet CEC Class 2 requirements. (Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub-fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.)
- D. Wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms—or where subject to mechanical damage—shall be installed in raceway at levels below 10ft.
- E. Do not install Class 2 wiring in raceway containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two.
- F. Do not install wiring in raceway containing tubing.
- G. Class 2 plenum rated wiring is allowed in concealed accessible ceilings. Installation of plenum rated wiring shall be in a neat and linear manner that is properly supported and fastened.
- H. Wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. Wire-to-wire connections shall be made at a terminal block or wire nut at junction box.
- I. Wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- J. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120v. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- K. Wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- L. Size of raceway and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of contractor, in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendation and CEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- M. Use coded conductors throughout with different colored conductors.
- N. Conceal all raceways, except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install raceway to maintain a minimum clearance of 6inch from high-temperature equipment (e.g., steam pipes or flues).
- O. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to ductwork.

- P. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of vertical raceways.
- Q. Contractor shall terminate control and interlock wiring, and maintain updated wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- R. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 3 ft in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than ½ in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture—including chiller and boiler rooms—liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- S. Raceway shall be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with couplings (per code). Terminations shall be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

#### 4.7 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. Contractor shall adhere to items listed in Wiring Article in Part 3 of Specification.
- B. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for communication cabling.
- C. Do not install communication wiring in raceway and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.
- D. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during the installation.
- E. Contractor shall verify the integrity of the entire network following the cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- F. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor shall be installed between the lines and ground. Lightning arrestor shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced lengths when that length is commercially available.
- H. Label communication wiring to indicate origination and destination data.

#### 4.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with rules and regulations of applicable local, state, and federal codes and ordinances as identified in Part 1 of this Specification.
- B. Contractor shall continually monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality workmanship.

- C. Contractor shall have work inspected by local or state authorities having jurisdiction over the work.

#### 4.9 IDENTIFICATION OF HARDWARE AND WIRING

- A. Wiring, cabling, and tubing within factory-fabricated panels shall be labeled within 2inch of termination with point address or termination number.
- B. Label pneumatic tubing at each end within 2inch of termination with descriptive identifier.
- C. Identify control panels with minimum 1/2inch letters on laminated plastic nameplates.
- D. Manufacturers' name plates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- E. Identifiers shall match record documents.
- F. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show instrument or item served.
- G. Identify room sensors relating to air handling units and terminal air units with nameplates.
- H. Label wiring and conduit, including wire within panels.
- I. Electrical devices such as transformers and power supplies shall be labeled with supply voltage and power circuit number.
- J. Terminal blocks shall be labeled to match the connected device.
- K. Label panel-mounted devices to match as built drawings.
- L. Wire and tubing labels shall be clearly indicated on the control drawings. Method of labeling shall be logical and intuitive.
- M. Provide label on ceiling grid near each terminal air unit, and air and water pressure transducers in the ductwork and piping.

#### 4.10 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25 percent of available memory free for future use.
- B. Point naming and point value: System point names and values shall be of sufficient size to allow flexibility in design, allowing easy operator interface without the use of a written point index or cryptic alphanumeric shorthand.
  - 1. Point ID is used to designate the location of the point within the building, such as mechanical room, wing, or level, or the building itself in a multi-building environment. Point ID shall be a minimum of 40 characters in length.

2. Point descriptors shall be a minimum of 132 characters.
3. Point states shall be a minimum of 8 characters in length.
4. Point engineering units shall be a minimum of 6 characters in length.
5. Point values shall be a minimum of 15 characters in length with a variable decimal point.

C. Operator interface:

1. Standard graphics: Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, fan coil unit, terminal equipment and all life safety devices. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as set points.
2. Show terminal equipment information on a graphic summary table. Provide dynamic information for each point shown.
3. Program graphic screens to show the location of, alarm points, and cameras. Set up these screens to provide automatic camera call up upon alarm.
4. Contractor shall provide labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and their functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface

#### 4.11 BUILDING CONTROL INSTALLATION SPECIFICS

A. Installation of sensors

1. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which sensor operates.
3. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported. Wiring to the sensor shall not be required to be polarity sensitive. Design of sensor shall be modular, which allows for rough-in of wiring without presence of electronics or esthetic covering.
4. Wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor readings.

B. Flow switch installation

1. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
2. Adjust flow switch in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Actuators

1. Mount and link control damper actuators per manufacturer's instructions.
  - a. Check operation of damper and actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
  - b. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
2. Electric and electronic actuators:

- a. Dampers: Actuators shall be direct-mounted on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. Actuators shall be mounted following manufacturer's recommendations.
- b. Valves: Actuators shall be connected to valves with adapters approved by actuator manufacturer. Actuators and adapters shall be mounted following actuator manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 4.12 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING

- A. Startup testing: Testing listed in this Article shall be performed by contractor and make up part of the necessary verification of an operating control system. Testing shall be completed before the Owner's representative is notified of the system demonstration.
  1. Contractor shall furnish all labor and test apparatus required to calibrate and prepare for service all instruments, controls, and accessory equipment furnished under this Specification.
  2. Before energizing the cables and wires, check for correct connections and test for short circuits, ground faults, continuity, and insulation.
  3. Enable control systems and verify calibration of all input devices individually. Perform calibration procedures per manufacturers' recommendations.
  4. Verify that digital output devices (relays, solenoid valves, two-position actuators and control valves, and magnetic starters) operate properly and that normal positions are correct.
  5. Verify that analog output devices (I/Ps, actuators) are functional, that start and span are correct, and that direction and normal positions are correct. Contractor shall check all control valves and automatic dampers to ensure proper action and closure. Contractor shall make any necessary adjustments to valve stem and damper blade travel.
  6. Verify that system operation adheres to the Sequences of Operation. Simulate and observe modes of operation by overriding and varying inputs and schedules. Tune all DDC loops and optimum start and stop routines.
  7. Analog intelligent devices shall be tested for current address, sensitivity and user defined message
  8. Verify activation of all waterflow switches.
  9. Open initiating device circuits and verify that the trouble signal actuates.

#### 4.13 CONTROL SYSTEM DEMONSTRATION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Demonstration:
  1. Prior to acceptance, control system shall undergo a series of performance tests to verify operation and compliance with this Specification. Tests shall occur after the contractor has completed the installation, started up the system, and performed its own tests.
  2. Tests described in this section are to be performed in addition to tests that contractor performs as a necessary part of the installation, startup, and debugging process and as specified in the Control System Checkout and Testing Article in Part 3 of this Specification. Engineer will be present to observe and review these tests. Notify Engineer at least 10 days in advance of the start of the testing procedures.



3. Demonstration process shall follow that approved in Part 1: Submittals. Approved checklists and forms shall be completed for all systems as part of the demonstration.
4. Contractor shall provide at least two persons equipped with two-way communication, and shall demonstrate field operation of each control and sensing point for modes of operation including day, night, occupied, unoccupied, fire/smoke alarm, seasonal changeover, alarm, trouble, and power failure modes. Purpose is to demonstrate the calibration, response, and action of every point and system. Test equipment required to prove operation of system shall be provided and operated by contractor.
5. Complete a log showing the date, technician's initials, and any corrective action taken or needed for each control input and output checked.
6. Demonstrate compliance with Part 1: System Performance.
7. Demonstrate compliance with Sequences of Operation through all modes of operation.
8. Demonstrate the following items:
  - a. Complete operation of the operator interface.
  - b. DDC Loop response: Contractor shall supply trend data output in a graphical form showing the step response of each DDC loop. Test shall show the loop's response to a change in set point that represents a change of actuator position of at least 25 percent of its full range. Sampling rate of the trend shall be from 10 seconds to 3 minutes, depending on the speed of the loop. For each sample, the trend data shall show the set point, actuator position, and controlled variable values. Any loop that yields unreasonably under-damped or over-damped control shall require further tuning by contractor.
  - c. Demand limiting (if implemented): Contractor shall supply a trend data output showing the action of demand limiting algorithm. Data shall document action on a minute-by-minute basis over a 30-minute period. Included in the trend shall be building kW, demand limiting set point, and the status of sheddable equipment outputs.
  - d. Optimum start and stop (if implemented): Contractor shall supply a trend data output showing the capability of the algorithm. The hour-by-hour trends shall include output status of optimally started and stopped equipment, and area temperature sensor inputs.
  - e. Interface to the building fire alarm system (if implemented).
  - f. Operational logs for each system that indicate all set points, operating points, valve positions, mode, and equipment status shall be submitted to the Architect and Engineer. These logs shall cover three 48-hour periods and have a sample frequency of not more than 10 minutes. Provide logs in both printed and disk formats.
  - g. Devices supplied by others connected to the LonWorks™ system shall be checked out and commissioned by supplier, and verification of interface interoperability shall be conducted by contractor.
9. Tests that fail to demonstrate operation of the system shall be repeated at a later date. Contractor shall be responsible for necessary repairs or revisions to hardware or software to successfully complete tests.

B. Acceptance:

1. Tests described in this Specification shall have been performed to the satisfaction of the Engineer and Owner prior to acceptance of the control system as meeting the requirements of completion. Tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of contractor may be exempt from completion requirements if stated in writing by the Engineer. Tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.
2. System shall not be accepted until all forms and checklists completed as part of the demonstration are submitted and approved as required in Part 1: Submittals.

#### 4.14 CLEANING

- A. Contractor shall clean up all debris resulting from its activities daily. Contractor shall remove all cartons, containers, and crates under its control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At completion of work in any area, contractor shall clean all of its work and equipment, keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris.
- C. At the completion of work, equipment furnished under this Section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be repaired to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

#### 4.15 SYSTEM TESTING AND CHECKOUT

- A. Prior to the acceptance test, perform the following tasks:
  1. Check for electrical continuity, eliminating shorts and open circuits, and verify grounding.
  2. Install, calibrate, adjust, debug and set system's initial operating parameters.
  3. Check out systems to verify the provided engineering documentation and approved submittals have been followed.
- B. The EMS must operate continuously for seven (7) days with no operational malfunctions or problems before setting an acceptance test date. Simulate different building control scenarios for worst-case condition and simulate other alarm conditions to test the response and handling of situations.
- C. Prepare and submit an Acceptance Test Plan for approval. This test shall include verification of communications, control, and response from the APM BMS server to the building controller and finally to the sensor and controlled device to demonstrate the proper operation of control loops, conditional control and default sequences in accordance with the project documentation.
- D. Obtain the approval of the Temecula USD representative as to when the acceptance test will be performed.
- E. Conduct the acceptance test in the presence of the designated representative for Temecula USD following the approved Acceptance Test Plan.

- F. The Temecula USD Commissioning Agent shall check off and initial each successfully tested item. Demonstrate that the electromechanical systems are operating properly and that the system is providing the required control sequences, alarms, graphic displays, and report generations.
- G. An ongoing punch list shall be maintained throughout the test of items. This list shall contain items that must be corrected prior to accepting the system for beneficial use and commencement of the warranty period.
- H. Provide copy of database of objects, and any programming tools used during the setup of the system.

#### 4.16 TRAINING

- A. Furnish the services of competent instructor(s) who shall give a minimum of (16) hours onsite instruction and orientation to the Temecula USD personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements of the equipment, the affected systems, and the software provided. The training shall be customized to reflect the actual system installed rather than being a general training course. Each instructor shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach.
- B. Train designated staff of Owner's representative and Owner to enable them to:
  - 1. Day-to-Day Operators:
    - a. Proficiently operate the system.
    - b. Understand control system architecture and configuration.
    - c. Understand system components.
    - d. Understand system operation, including system control and optimizing routines (algorithms).
    - e. Operate the workstation and peripherals.
    - f. Log on and off the system.
    - g. Access graphics, point reports, and logs.
    - h. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules.
    - i. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphical visual signals.
    - j. Understand system drawings and the Operation and Maintenance manual.
    - k. Understand the job layout and location of control components.
    - l. Access data from various network and control nodes.
    - m. Operate portable operator's terminals.
  - 2. Advanced operators:
    - a. Make and change graphics on the workstation.
    - b. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including annunciation and routing of these.
    - c. Create, delete, and modify point trend logs, and graph or print these both on an ad-hoc basis and at user-definable time intervals.
    - d. Create, delete, and modify reports.

- e. Add, remove, and modify system physical points.
  - f. Create, modify, and delete programming.
  - g. Add panels when required.
  - h. Add operator interface stations.
  - i. Create, delete, and modify system displays—both graphical and otherwise.
  - j. Perform system field checkout procedures.
  - k. Perform controller unit operation and maintenance procedures.
  - l. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures.
  - m. Perform system diagnostic procedures.
  - n. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points.
  - o. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware.
  - p. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components.
3. System managers and administrators:
- a. Maintain software and prepare backups.
  - b. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software.
  - c. Add new users and understand password security procedures.
- C. These objectives will be divided into three logical groupings. Participants may attend one or more of these, depending on the level of knowledge required:
1. Day-to-day operators.
  2. Advanced operators.
  3. System managers and administrators.
- D. Provide course outline and materials as per Submittals Article in Part 1 of this Specification. Instructor(s) shall provide one copy of training material per student.
- E. Instructor(s) shall be factory-trained experienced in presenting this material.
- F. Classroom training shall be done using a network of working controllers representative of the installed hardware.

## PART 5 - POINTS LIST AND SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- 5.1 Refer to Controls Drawings for control schematics, points lists and sequence of operation.

END OF SECTION 230923

## SECTION 23 2300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- A. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings for Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Parker Hannifin Corporation; ZoomLock® Flame-Free Fittings.
  - 2. Fitting Body: Refrigerant Grade Copper in accordance with ASTM B75 or ASTM B743.
  - 3. For information on Parker Hannifin ZoomLock® special tools, refer to <http://parker.com/zoomlock>.
  - 4. Maximum Rated Pressure (MRP): 700 psig (48 bar).
  - 5. Continuous Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
  - 6. O-Ring Temperature Rating: -40 to 300 deg F (-40 to 149 deg C).

7. Minimum Burst Pressure in accordance with UL 207: 2100 psig (145 bar).
8. Vacuum Pressure Capability: 20 Microns.
9. Complies with UL 109 for vibration resistance.
10. Approved for the following oils: POE, PVE, PAG.
11. Approved Tubing Materials: Copper-to-copper connections.
12. Compatible with the following copper tubing:
  - a. Tubing tolerance must conform to ASTM B280, ASTM B88, or EN 12735-1.
  - b. Klauke 19 kN Jaws and RIDGID Compatible Jaws:
    - 1) Hard Drawn Copper, 1/4 to 1-3/8 inch (6.4 to 35 mm): Type ACR, M, L, K.
    - 2) Soft (Annealed) Copper 1/4 to 1-3/8 inch (6.4 to 35 mm): Type ACR, L, K.
  - c. Klauke 15 kN Compatible Jaws:
    - 1) Hard Drawn Copper, 1/4 to 1-1/8 inch (6.4 to 28.6 mm): Type ACR, M, L.
    - 2) Hard Drawn Copper, Up to 7/8 inch (22 mm): Type K.
    - 3) Soft (Annealed) Copper: 1/4 to 1-1/8 inch (6.4 to 28.6 mm): Type ACR, L.
    - 4) Soft (Annealed) Copper, up to 7/8 inch (22 mm): Type K.
13. Standards Compliance:
  - a. UL 207 Listed, approved for field and factory installations, SA#33958, SDTW(7) except where noted.
  - b. International Mechanical Code (IMC) 2018, 2015, 2012, 2009, 2006 per ICC-ES, PMG-1296.
  - c. International Residential Code (IRC) and Uniform Mechanical Code (UMC) 2018, 2015, 2012, 2009, 2006 per ICC-ES, PMG-1296.
  - d. ASHRAE 15, ANSI 15, ASME B31.5, ANSI 31.5, ASTM B75, ASTM B88, ASTM B743, ASTM B280, EN 12735-1, ASHRAE 15.
  - e. SAE Threaded Fittings: Conform to SAE J513 and SAE J533.
  - f. Compatible ODM Fittings: Material conforms to C12200 copper in accordance with ASTM B280 or Cu-DHP CW024A in accordance with BS EN 12735-1; not UL Listed.
- B. Flexible Connectors:
  1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for solenoid valve controllers and control wiring.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.



- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings: Join copper tubing and fittings with tools and installation procedure defined by fitting manufacturer.
  - 1. Training: Installation by manufacturer-trained and certified installers.
  - 2. Installation:
    - a. Install fittings following installation steps in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
    - b. Examination: Upon delivery to the jobsite, examine copper tubing and fittings for debris, defects, incise marks (manufacturer's engraving on tube), holes, or cracks.
    - c. If any brazing is required, follow manufacturer's brazing guidelines. Not following guidelines will damage the internal O-ring, likely resulting in leaks.
    - d. When placing foam insulation, wrap electrical tape over end of a flare fitting to prevent tearing.
    - e. Do not crimp fittings over flared style tubing (ODF). The flare can be cut off and the fitting crimped to the tube if there is a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) of tube remaining.
  - 3. Installation general locations:
    - a. Ensure piping is spaced such that the crimp gauge referenced in the installation procedure can be fit around the fittings to check for proper crimp.
    - b. Place fittings no closer than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) apart.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### 3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.

2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

END OF SECTION 23 2300

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7. SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Duct lining and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Kitchen Type I hood exhaust-Stainless Steel Sheets: ASTM A 480/A 480M, welded seams and joints Type 304, and having a No. 2D finish for concealed ducts and No. 4 for exposed ducts, minimum 18 gage. Provide stainless steel exhaust ducting from the kitchen hood exhaust to the roof mounted exhaust fans and elsewhere as indicated on the drawings. All kitchen exhaust ducts, including connections from hoods shall be installed within the appropriate section of CMC, NFPA 91 & 96. Stainless steel ductwork shall be built for structural strength and stability and of a thickness not less than 18 gage. Duct shall run 2% slope back to hood, contained code required access doors, and be in a fire rated duct wrap. Provide long radiused elbows.
- D. Wood Shop Product Conveying System – Black Iron flanged and gasketed, minimum 18 gage. Provide black steel exhaust ducting from the flexible duct to the point of duct through the exterior wall penetration. Ductwork outside the building shall be Stainless Steel Sheets: ASTM A 480/A 480M, welded seams and joints Type 304, and having a No. 4 finish. All ductwork shall be built for structural strength and stability and of a thickness not less than 18 gage. Ductwork shall contain code required access doors at each elbow and branch entry. Provide long radiused elbows and 15 degrees max. branch entries and duct transitions angle.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- G. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

- H. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Rigid Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - d. Owens Corning.
2. Type II, Rigid: 1" thick 6 lbs./cu. ft. density for indoor application and 2" thick 6 lbs./cu. ft. density for outdoor application.
3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
  - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.



3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm max.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - a. Fan discharges.
  - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch w.g, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch w.g, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch w.g and shall be rated for 10-inch w.g static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.7 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finishes, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch w.g (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.

6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch w.g (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch w.g (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch w.g (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Product Conveying Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

#### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Provide fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  1. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  2. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
  3. Obtain structural engineer's approval for the type of fasteners to be allowed on this project.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

#### 3.5 DUCT LINING INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts lining where indicated on drawings as (L) including supply air ducts, return air ducts, mixed air boxes, air relief ducts and in accordance with applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards" latest edition

#### 3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems." ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.8 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
  - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 1-Inch w.g: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - b. Supply Ducts: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - c. Return Ducts: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - d. Exhaust Ducts: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - e. Outdoor Air Ducts: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
  - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DUCT CLEANING

A. The contractor shall be responsible for keeping the ductwork in free of dust condition to be verified by the commissioning agency selected for this project. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing. Any violations of the code required measures intended to maintain proper indoor air quality will trigger automatic requirements to vacuum clean the entire air conditioning system affected by the noted violation.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.

2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Fan coil unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, condensate drain pans, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch w.g (500 Pa).
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.



- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch w.g (1000 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- B. Return Air Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch w.g (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- C. Outside Air Intake Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units:
    - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
    - b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
    - c. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch w.g (500 Pa).
    - d. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - e. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - f. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch w.g (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Environmental Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch w.g (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A, if negative pressure, and A, if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  2. Ducts Connected to Type I Commercial Grease Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
    - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
    - b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
    - c. Welded seams and joints.
    - d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch w.g (750 Pa).
    - e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
    - f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to the Wood Shop Dust Collector: Comply with NFPA 96.
  - a. Indoor: Black Steel
  - b. Outdoor: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
  - c. Welded seams and joints.
  - d. Pressure Class: Negative 8-inch w.g (2000 Pa).
  - e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams and joints outdoor and flanged connections indoor.
  - f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
  
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
  2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  
- F. Liner:
  1. Supply Air Ducts (Indoor): Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-inch (38 mm) thick.
  2. Return Air Ducts (Indoor): Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-inch (38 mm) thick.
  3. Supply Air Ducts (Outdoor): Fibrous glass, Type I, 2-inch (38 mm) thick.
  4. Return Air Ducts (Outdoor): Fibrous glass, Type I, 2-inch (38 mm) thick.
  5. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-inch (38 mm) thick.
  
- G. Elbow Configuration:
  1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - d. Velocity 3,500 fpm (17.73 m/s) or Higher:

- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 2.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Velocity 3000 fpm (15.2 m/s) or Higher: 2.5 radius-to-diameter ratio Stamped or Pleated for 90-degree elbow.

H. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.
  - d. Velocity 3000 fpm (15.2 m/s) or Higher: 15-degree lateral.

3.12 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
  - 2. Barometric relief dampers.
  - 3. Manual volume dampers.
  - 4. Control dampers.
  - 5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
  - 6. Flange connectors.
  - 7. Turning vanes.
  - 8. Remote damper operators.
  - 9. Duct-mounted access doors.
  - 10. Flexible connectors.
  - 11. Flexible ducts.
  - 12. Duct accessory hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

#### 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 2. Pottorff.

3. Ruskin Company.
  4. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch-thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch-width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
  2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  3. Electric actuators.
  4. Chain pulls.
  5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
  6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
  8. Screen Type: Insect.
  9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- b. Nailor Industries Inc.
- c. Pottorff.
- d. Ruskin Company.
- e. Ivac.
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

## 2.5 BLAST GATES

### A. Black Steel:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kraus.
  - b. Powertec
  - c. Rockler
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, black steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges frames for installing in ducts.

## 2.6 CONTROL DAMPERS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. McGill AirFlow LLC.

2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  3. Pottorff.
  4. Ruskin Company.
  5. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  6. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
  2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
  2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized-steel.
  4. 0.0747-inch-thick dual skin.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  2. Dampers in ducts shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.7 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  2. Pottorff.
  3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.
- E. Heat-Responsive Device: Resettable, 165 deg F rated, fire-closure device.



- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable device and switch package, factory installed, rated.
- G. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.063-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- I. Leakage: Class I.
- J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking.
- L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- M. Damper Motors: two-position action.
- N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
  - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- O. Accessories:
  - 1. Auxiliary switches for signaling or position indication.
  - 2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

## 2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.

3. Hardcast, Inc.
  4. Nexus PDQ.
  5. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.9 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single or Double wall as applicable.
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.10 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Pottorff.
  2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  3. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Aluminum.
- D. Cable: Steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

## 2.11 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  4. Nailor Industries Inc.
  5. Pottorff.
  6. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.12 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Flame Gard, Inc.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.13 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Hardcast, Inc.
  - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.14 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. Flex-Tek Group.
  - 3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - 5. Casco Silentflex II
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with Title 24.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## 2.15 FLEXIBLE DUCTS FOR WOOD DUST CONVEYING SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Kraus.
  - 2. Powertec

3. Peachtree.
  4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- B. Uninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Ultra flexible PVC supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4500 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## 2.16 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

- G. Install fire/smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 2. At drain pans and seals.
  - 3. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 4. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 5. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 6. Upstream from turning vanes.
  - 7. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  - 8. Control devices requiring inspection.
  - 9. Elsewhere as indicated.
- J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- K. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- L. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- P. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."



## 2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Flexmaster USA, Inc.
  2. JP Lamborn Co.
  3. McGill Airflow LLC.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect diffusers or grilles or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- D. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- E. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- F. Installation:
1. Install ducts fully extended.
  2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

*THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY BLANK*

## SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Modular core supply grilles.
  - 2. Double deflection side wall registers.
  - 3. Fixed face registers and grilles.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
  - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

### 2.2 DIFFUSERS

#### A. Perforated Modular Core Diffusers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - b. Carnes Company.
  - c. Krueger.
  - d. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - f. Titus.
  - g. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Border: 1-1/2-inch-width with countersunk screw holes.
5. Blades:
  - a. Set in modules.
6. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 300 mm).
7. Duct Inlet: Square.
8. Face Style: Flush.
9. Mounting: T-bar.
10. Modules: Removable; rotatable.

### 2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

#### A. Adjustable Double Deflection Side Wall Supply Air Registers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - b. Carnes Company.
  - c. Krueger.
  - d. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - f. Titus.
  - g. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 1/2 inch (13 mm) apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 1/2 inch (13 mm) apart.
7. Frame: 1 inch (25 mm) wide.

8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
10. Accessories:
  - a. Rear-blade gang operator.
  - b. Young regulator for gyp board soffit.

B. Fixed Face Wall Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - b. Carnes Company.
  - c. Krueger.
  - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - e. Titus.
  - f. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Blades angle: 35 deg.
6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

C. Perforated Ceiling Return Air Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - b. Carnes Company.
  - c. Krueger.
  - d. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - f. Titus.
  - g. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Border: 1-1/2-inch-width with countersunk screw holes.
5. Face Size: **24 by 24 inches** (600 by 300 mm).
6. Duct Inlet: Square.
7. Face Style: Flush.
8. Mounting: T-bar.
9. Appearance shall match supply air diffusers in the same room.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers.
- D. Provide plenum box for duct side connection in tight spaces.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, the contractor shall adjust direction of air flow in modular core diffusers as directed, before starting air balancing.
- B. Set side wall register to initial supply air pattern at 22° angle. Increase angle to 45° degrees if the suggested above blades angle deemed uncomfortable after TAB completion.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS – 4 TONS  
NOMINAL AND SMALLER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
  - 3. Coils.
  - 4. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 5. Air filtration.
  - 6. Gas furnaces.
  - 7. Dampers.
  - 8. Electrical power connections.
  - 9. Controls.
  - 10. Roof curbs.
  - 11. Accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  - 5. Fans:



- a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
  - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
  - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
  8. Include gas furnaces with performance characteristics.
  9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  10. Roof curb adapters.
    - a. Include dimensions and weight.
    - b. Include air pressure drop at scheduled air flow for each unit.
    - c. Include certified calculations indicating compliance with wind and seismic criteria.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning unit.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
  3. Wind- and Seismic-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for RTUs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  4. Restraint of internal components.
- D. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. System startup reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit.
  2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
  3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven fan.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- G. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.
  - 1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind and seismic performance requirements.
- H. Wind-Restraint Performance:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 110 miles per hour.
  - 2. Building Classification Category: Occupancy category III.
  - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- I. Seismic Performance: RTUs, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Carrier.

## 2.3 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Manufacturer's standard casing and floor.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Access Panels:
  - 1. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
  - 2. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
  - 3. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  - 4. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - b. Coil Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - c. Damper Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - d. Filter Section: Inspection and access panels large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - 1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Single-wall, galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer sheet.
  - 3. Drain Connection:
    - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on bottom and side of pan.
    - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 3/4.
  - 4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
  - 5. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
  - 6. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.4 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

- B. Supply-Air Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  - 1. Variable-speed centrifugal or axial, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.
  - 2. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation and seismic control. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting.
  - 3. Drives, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- C. Condenser-Coil Fan: propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.

## 2.5 COILS

- A. General Requirements for Coils:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Fabricate coils section to allow for removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
  - 3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
- B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- C. Outdoor-Air (Condenser) Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Coatings: Corrosion-resistant coating.
  - 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

## 2.6 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, variable-speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
  - 1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  - 6. Minimum off-time relay.
  - 7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  - 8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

## 2.7 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Panel Filters:
  - 1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames. 2-inch thick MERV 13 filters.
  - 2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  - 3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  - 4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

## 2.8 GAS FURNACES

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.
- B. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- C. Burners: Stainless steel.
  - 1. Fuel: Natural gas.
  - 2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
  - 3. Gas Control Valve: Two stage.
  - 4. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

5. High-Altitude Kit: For Project elevations more than 2000 feet above sea level.

D. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

E. Venting, Gravity: Gravity vented with vertical extension.

F. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Manifold: Safety switches and controls complying with ANSI standards.

## 2.9 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.

B. Barometric relief dampers.

C. Electronic Damper Operators:

1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

3. Operator Motors:

a. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

b. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.

4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.

5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.

6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:

a. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.

7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.

8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.

10. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.

## 2.10 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.11 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and indicated on drawings.

- B. Basic Unit Controls:

- 1. Control-voltage transformer.
- 2. Unit-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
  - a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
  - b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
  - c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

- C. DDC Controller:

- 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
- 2. Safety Control Operation:
  - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
  - b. Fire-Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with building fire alarm system.
- 3. Supply Fan Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
- 4. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.
  - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.
- 5. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:



- a. Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles the compressor.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.
6. Gas Furnace Operation:
- a. Occupied Periods: Stage burner to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.
7. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
- a. Occupied Periods: Open to setting determined by air balancer to provide scheduled minimum outdoor air flow.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.
- D. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
  2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
  3. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
    - a. Adjusting set points.
    - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
    - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature.
    - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
    - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
    - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
    - g. Monitoring cooling load.
    - h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
    - i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

## 2.12 ROOF CURBS AND ROOF CURB ADAPTERS

- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. Materials: ASTM C1071, Type I or II.
    - b. Thickness: 2 inches.

2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
  - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
  - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
  - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
  - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
- C. Curb Dimensions: Height of 14 inches minimum, adaptable horizontal and vertical dimensions as required for existing roof openings.

## 2.13 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.
- C. Remote potentiometer to adjust minimum economizer damper position.
- D. Return-air bypass damper.
- E. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.
- F. Safeties:
  1. Smoke detector.
  2. Condensate overflow switch.
  3. High pressure control.
  4. Gas furnace airflow-proving switch.
- G. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
- H. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- I. Concentric diffuser with white louvers and polished aluminum return grilles, insulated diffuser box with mounting flanges, and interior transition.
- J. Door switches to disable heating or reset set point when open.
- K. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.

## 2.14 MATERIALS

### A. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

### B. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.

### C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

### D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.15 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

### A. AHRI Compliance:

1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
3. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.

### B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on existing roof curb. Provide roof curb adapter as necessary to interface new unit to existing roof curb and duct connections. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 3/4, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend and connect to existing condensate drain connection. Provide new union on existing pipe. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- D. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC". Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

### 3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb. Provide roof curb adapter as necessary.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC".

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to CEC and NECA 1.

- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
  - 3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 4. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 5. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 6. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  - 7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.

9. Verify that filters are installed.
10. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
12. Connect and purge gas line.
13. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
14. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
15. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
16. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
17. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
18. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Start refrigeration system.
  - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
  - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
19. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
20. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
21. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency:
  - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
  - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
  - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
  - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
  - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
  - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
22. Calibrate thermostats.
23. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
24. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
25. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
26. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
27. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.

- d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
28. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
- a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
29. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
- a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
30. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.

2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11



*THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY BLANK*

## SECTION 237416.13 - PACKAGED, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
  - 3. Coils.
  - 4. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 5. Air filtration.
  - 6. Dampers.
  - 7. Electrical power connections.
  - 8. Controls.
  - 9. Roof curbs.
  - 10. Accessories.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  - 5. Fans:

- a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
  - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
  - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
  8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, rooftop air-conditioning unit.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
  3. Wind- and Seismic-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for RTUs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  4. Restraint of internal components.

- D. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. System startup reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit.
  - 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
  - 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven fan.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- G. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.
  - 1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind and seismic performance requirements.
- H. Wind-Restraint Performance:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 110 miles per hour.
  - 2. Building Classification Category: Occupancy category III.
  - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- I. Seismic Performance: RTUs, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Carrier.
- B. Trane.

## 2.3 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Manufacturer's standard casing and floor.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Access Panels:
  - 1. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
  - 2. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
  - 3. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  - 4. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - b. Coil Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - c. Damper Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - d. Filter Section: Inspection and access panels large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - 1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Single-wall, galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer sheet.
  - 3. Drain Connection:
    - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on bottom and side of pan.
    - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 3/4.
  - 4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
  - 5. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
  - 6. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.4 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

- B. Supply-Air Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  - 1. Variable-speed centrifugal or axial, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.
  - 2. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation and seismic control. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting.
  - 3. Drives, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- C. Condenser-Coil Fan: propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.
- D. Relief-Air Fan: Propeller, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.

## 2.5 COILS

- A. General Requirements for Coils:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Fabricate coils section to allow for removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
  - 3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
- B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- C. Outdoor-Air (Condenser) Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Coatings: Corrosion-resistant coating.
  - 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

- D. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Comply with UL 1995.
1. Casing Assembly: Slip-in or flanged type with galvanized-steel frame.
  2. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
  3. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.
  4. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.
  5. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection.
    - a. Mercury contactor.
    - b. Solid-state, stepless pulse controller.
    - c. Toggle switches, one per step.
    - d. Step controller.
    - e. Time-delay relay.
    - f. Pilot lights, one per step.
    - g. Airflow proving switch.

## 2.6 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, variable-speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  6. Minimum off-time relay.
  7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

## 2.7 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Panel Filters:
1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames. 2-inch thick MERV 13 filters.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.



- B. Adhesive: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

## 2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.
- B. Barometric relief dampers.
- C. Electronic Damper Operators:
  - 1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  - 2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  - 3. Operator Motors:
    - a. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
    - b. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - 7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  - 8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  - 9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  - 10. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and indicated on drawings.

- B. Basic Unit Controls:

- 1. Control-voltage transformer.
- 2. Unit-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
  - a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
  - b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
  - c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

- C. DDC Controller:

- 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
- 2. Safety Control Operation:
  - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
  - b. Fire-Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with building fire alarm system.
  - c. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
- 3. Supply Fan Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
- 4. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.
  - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.

5. Electric-Heating-Coil Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Modulate coil to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Energize coil to maintain setback temperature.
  - c. Operate supplemental electric heating coil with compressor for heating with outdoor temperature below 40 deg F.
  
6. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
  - a. Morning building outdoor air flush cycles.
  - b. Occupied Periods: Open to fixed minimum intake position as determined by air balancer for the scheduled minimum outdoor air flow, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air temperature is lower than return air temperature. Use mixed-air and outdoor-air temperature to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
  - c. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
  - d. Outdoor-Airflow Monitor: Accuracy maximum plus or minus 5 percent within 15 and 100 percent of total outdoor air. Monitor microprocessor shall adjust for temperature, and output shall range from 2- to 10-V dc.
  
7. Carbon Dioxide Sensor Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Reset minimum outdoor-air ratio down to scheduled minimum airflow to maintain maximum 750-ppm concentration.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
  
- D. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
  1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
  2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
  3. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
    - a. Adjusting set points.
    - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
    - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature.
    - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
    - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
    - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
    - g. Monitoring cooling load.
    - h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
    - i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.
  
- E. Smoke detector and fire alarm interface.

1. Provide factory installed smoke detector in supply air stream of units 2,000 cfm and larger.
  - a. Smoke detector to shut down unit on detection of smoke.
  - b. Provide dry form C contacts for monitoring smoke detector status at fire alarm system.
2. Provide input to shut down unit from signal by fire alarm system.

## 2.11 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. Materials: ASTM C1071, Type I or II.
    - b. Thickness: 2 inches.
  2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
    - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
- C. Curb Dimensions: Height of 14 inches minimum, adaptable horizontal and vertical dimensions as required for existing roof openings.

## 2.12 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.
- C. Remote potentiometer to adjust minimum economizer damper position.

- D. Return-air bypass damper.
- E. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.
- F. Safeties:
  - 1. Smoke detector.
  - 2. Condensate overflow switch.
  - 3. High pressure control.
- G. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
- H. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- I. Concentric diffuser with white louvers and polished aluminum return grilles, insulated diffuser box with mounting flanges, and interior transition.
- J. Door switches to disable heating or reset set point when open.
- K. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.

## 2.13 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 2. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
  - 3. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
  1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 3/4, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend and connect to existing condensate drain connection. Provide new union on existing pipe. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

### 3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.

3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC".

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to CEC and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
  3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- D. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 4. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 5. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 6. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  - 7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 9. Verify that filters are installed.
  - 10. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  - 11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
  - 12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  - 13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
  - 14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  - 15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  - 17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Start refrigeration system.
    - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
  - 18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  - 19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 20. Calibrate thermostats.
  - 21. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  - 22. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
  - 23. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
    - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - 24. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.



25. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
26. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
27. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
  - a. High-temperature limit safety operation.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
28. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

*THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY BLANK*

## SECTION 238127 - VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting and may be connected to ducts.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Contractor's qualifications:
  - 1. List of VRF system installations in the state of California including the following:
    - a. System sizes.
    - b. Installed equipment manufacturers.
    - c. Job address and contact person in charge of operating the system.
    - d. Short summary of VRF equipment and piping installation experience and products submittals.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- D. Required Format for Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings and Product Data shall meet the requirements.
  - 2. Shop drawings shall be 11 inch by 17 inch, landscape, bound on the left edge. They shall be produced with AutoCAD or Microsoft Visio. Organize the packages by building and floors.

3. All text based documents and product data sheets shall be 8-1/2 inch by 11-inch format bound on the left edge. To the maximum extent possible Adobe Acrobat shall be used to produce the documents in an X.pdf format.
4. Software files shall be submitted on fully labeled CDs that shall include a table of contents file in pdf format that provides a description of all the files on the CD and or USB Drive.
5. Requirement for Shop Drawings:
  - a. System Architecture Design Diagram:
    - 1) This is a riser diagram that shall show the IP layers and all the field bus layers.
    - 2) It shall show each router, repeater, controller and protocol translator that is connected to either the IP layer or any of the field busses.
    - 3) This diagram shall include the existing control system that is to be integrated into the common enterprise level system.
    - 4) Each component that is shown shall have a name that is representative of how it will be identified in the completed database and the manufacturer's name and model number. Example: Device A10: FCU1 Controller, XXX, IHM Model 1401Z0
    - 5) The physical relationship of one component to another component shall reflect the proposed installation with detailed wiring diagrams.
    - 6) This diagram shall not include power supplies, sensors or end devices.
  - b. Layout Design Drawing for each control panel:
    - 1) The layout drawing shall be with all devices shown in their proposed positions.
    - 2) All control devices shall be identified by name.
    - 3) All terminal strips and wire channels shall be shown and labeled
    - 4) All control transformers shall be shown and labeled
    - 5) All 120 VAC receptacles shall be shown and labeled
    - 6) All IP connection points shall be shown and labeled
  - c. Wiring Design Diagram for each control panel:
    - 1) The control voltage wiring diagram shall clearly designate devices powered by each control transformer. If the control devices use half-wave power, the diagram shall clearly show the consistent grounding of the appropriate power connection. All wire identification numbers shall be annotated on the diagram.
    - 2) The VRF Bus wiring diagram shall clearly show the use of the daisy chain wiring concept, the order in which the devices are connected to the FCU and EF and the location of end of segment termination devices. All wire identification numbers shall be annotated on the diagram.
    - 3) If shielded communication wiring is used, the grounding of the shield shall be shown.
    - 4) The terminal strip wiring diagram shall identify all connections on both sides of the terminal strip. Wiring label numbers for all wiring leaving the control panel shall be annotated on the diagram.
  - d. Wiring Design Diagram for individual components (controllers, protocol translators, etc.):
    - 1) The wiring diagram for each component shall identify all I/O, power and communication wiring, and the locations on the terminal blocks to which the wires are landed. Example: Fan Status sensor is wired from terminals 5/6 on the controller to terminals 17 and 18 on the terminal strip.
  - e. Installation Design Detail for each I/O device:
    - 1) Include a drawing of the wiring details for each sensor and/or end device.

- 2) For devices with multiple quantities a standard detail may be submitted.
  - a) Note: The standard detail drawing must be accompanied by a list of the locations where the devices will be installed.
6. Requirements for Product Data:
  - a. Direct Digital Control System Hardware Technical Data.
    - 1) A complete bill of materials of equipment to be used indicating quantity, manufacturer and model number.
    - 2) Manufacturer's description and technical data for each unique device to include performance curves, product specification sheets and installation instructions. When a manufacturer's data sheet refers to a series of devices rather than a specific model, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted or clearly indicated by other means.
    - 3) This requirement applies to:
      - a) Controllers
      - b) Transducers / Transmitters
      - c) Sensors
      - d) Actuators
      - e) Valves
      - f) Relays and Switches
      - g) Control Panels
      - h) Power Supplies
      - i) Batteries
  - b. An Instrumentation List for each system:
    - 1) The list shall be in a table format.
    - 2) Include name, type of device, manufacturer, model number and product data sheet number.
- E. Turnover Documents after Completion and Commissioning:
  1. The following is a list of post construction turnover documentation that shall be updated to reflect any changes during construction and re-submitted as "As-Built."
    - a. System architecture drawing.
    - b. Layout drawing for each control panel.
    - c. Wiring diagram for each control panel.
    - d. Wiring diagram for individual components.
    - e. System flow diagram for each controlled system.
    - f. Instrumentation list for each controlled system.
    - g. Sequence of controls.
  2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Manuals shall consist of two parts. The information shall be in three ring binders with tabs and a table of contents. Diagrams shall be on 11" by 17" foldouts. If color has been used to differentiate information, the printed copies shall be in color.
    - b. Part I: Information common to the entire system. This shall include but not be limited to the following.
      - 1) Product manuals for the key software tasks.
        - a) Operating the system.
        - b) Administrating the system.
      - 2) System Architecture Diagram.
      - 3) List of recommended maintenance tasks associated with the system servers, operator workstations, data servers, web servers and web clients.
        - a) Define the task.
        - b) Recommend a frequency for the task.
        - c) Reference the product manual that includes instructions on executing the task.

- 4) Names, addresses, and telephone numbers of installing contractors and service representatives for equipment and control systems.
- 5) Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
- 6) Submit one copy for each building, plus two extra copies.
- c. Part II: Information common to the systems in a single building.
  - 1) System architecture diagram for components within the building annotated with specific location information.
  - 2) As-built wiring design diagram for each control panel.
  - 3) As-built wiring design diagram for all components.
  - 4) Installation design details for each I/O device.
  - 5) As-built system flow diagram for each system.
  - 6) Sequence of control for each system.
  - 7) Product data sheet for each component.
  - 8) Installation data sheet for each component.
  - 9) Description of system commissioning protocol and procedures in binder with two extra copies.
  - 10) Initial system changes control log in binder.
  - 11) Submit two copies for each building and two extra copies for file.
3. Software:
  - a. Submit a LICENSED COPY of all software.
  - b. All software revisions shall be as installed at the time of the system acceptance. All submittals will include all revisions
4. Firmware Files:
  - a. Submit a copy of all firmware files that were downloaded to or pre-installed on any devices installed as part of this project.
  - b. This does not apply to firmware that is permanently burned on a chip at the factory and can only be replaced by replacing the chip.
  - c. Submit a copy of all secondary graphic files on DVD such as bitmaps, jpegs, etc. that were used in the creation of the graphic pages.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
  2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. The units shall have a manufacturer's parts only warranty for a period of two (2) year from date of installation. The compressors shall have parts only warranty of seven (7) years from date of installation. A completed commissioning report shall be submitted to the manufacturer by a certified installer. During the stated period, should any part fail due to defects in material and workmanship, it shall be repaired or replaced at the discretion of the manufacturer according to their terms and conditions. All warranty service work shall be performed by the manufacturers factory trained service professional.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.; HVAC Advanced Products Division (Basis of Design).
  - 2. LG Electronics USA: Air Conditioning Division
  - 3. Approved equal.

### 2.2 INDOOR UNITS

- A. General
  - 1. Unit shall be factory assembled, wired, piped and run tested.
  - 2. Unit shall be vertical or horizontal, ducted, cassette or wall mount ductless as indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Unit shall be designed to be installed for indoor application.
  - 4. The supply air shall be flanged for field installed filter section, mixing box, supply and return ductwork that shall not exceed the external static pressure limitation of the unit.
  - 5. Unit shall be capable to be installed with heat recovery VRF system as indicated and scheduled on drawings.
  - 6. Filters shall be of a type and efficiency as indicated on drawings and in the spec hereinafter.
- B. Casing/Panel
  - 1. Unit case shall be manufactured using galvanized steel plate.
  - 2. The cold surfaces of the unit shall be covered internally with a coated polystyrene insulating material.



3. The cold surfaces of the unit shall be covered externally with sheet insulation made of Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer (M-Class) (EPDM).
  4. The external insulation shall be plenum rated and conform to ASTM Standard D-1418.
  5. Unit shall be provided with hanger brackets designed to support the unit weight on four corners.
  6. Hanger brackets shall have pre-punched holes designed to accept field supplied, all thread rod hangers.
  7. Wall mount ductless or ceiling mounted cassette units shall have manufactured using Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS) polymeric resin and has a morning fog finish.
- C. Cabinet Assembly
1. Unit shall be equipped with factory installed temperature thermistors for
    - a. Return air.
    - b. Refrigerant entering coil.
    - c. Refrigerant leaving coil.
  2. Unit shall have a factory assembled, piped and wired electronic expansion valve (EEV) for refrigerant control.
  3. Unit shall have a built-in control panel to communicate with other indoor units and to the outdoor unit.
  4. Unit shall have the following functions as standard
    - a. Self-diagnostic function
    - b. Auto restart function
    - c. Auto changeover function (Heat Recovery system only)
    - d. Auto operation function
    - e. Child lock function
    - f. Forced operation
    - g. Dual thermistor control
    - h. Sleep mode
    - i. External static pressure (ESP) control
- D. Fan Assembly
1. The unit shall have two direct driven Sirocco fans.
  2. The fan shall be made of high strength ABS GP-2200 polymeric resin.
  3. The fans shall be mounted on a common shaft.
  4. The fan motor shall be Brushless Digitally controlled (BLDC) with permanently lubricated and sealed ball bearings.
  5. The fan/motor assembly shall be mounted on vibration attenuating rubber grommets.
  6. The fan speed shall be controlled using microprocessor based direct digitally controlled algorithm.
  7. In cooling mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings: Low, Med, High and Auto.
  8. In heating mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings: Low, Med, High and Auto.
  9. The Auto fan setting shall adjust the fan speed to most effectively achieve the set-point.
  10. Each of the settings can be field adjusted from the factory setting (RPM/ESP).
  11. Unit shall be designed for high speed air volume against an external static pressure of up to 1.0" water gauge.
- E. Filter Assembly
1. Horizontal ducted units shall be provided with a field mounted return filter box with side access hinged access door. Filter shall be 12" deep MERV 13 Camfil Model Durafil ES not to exceed external static pressure limitation of the high static ducted indoor unit.

2. Ductless wall mount or cassette units shall have a factory supplied removable, washable filter.

F. Coil Assembly

1. Unit shall have a factory built coil comprised of aluminum fins mechanically bonded on copper tubing.
2. Unit shall have minimum of 2 rows of coils.
3. Unit shall have a factory supplied condensate drain pan below the coil.
4. Horizontal unit shall be installed and wired condensate drain pump capable of providing minimum 27.5-inch lift from bottom surface of the unit.
5. Vertical unit shall be designed for gravity drain.
6. Unit drain pan shall be provided with a secondary drain port/plug allowing pan to be drained for service.
7. The drain pump shall have a safety switch to shut off the unit if condensate rises too high in the drain pan.
8. Unit shall have provision of 45° flare refrigerant pipe connections
9. The coil shall be factory pressure tested at a minimum of 551 psig.
10. All refrigerant piping from outdoor unit or Heat Recovery (HR) unit to indoor unit shall be field insulated.

G. Microprocessor Control

1. The unit shall have a factory installed microprocessor controller capable of performing functions necessary to operate the system.
2. The unit shall be able to communicate with other indoor units and the outdoor unit using a field supplied minimum of 18 AWG, 2-core, stranded and shielded communication cable.
3. The unit controls shall operate the indoor unit using one of the five operating modes:
  - a. Auto changeover (Heat Recovery System only)
  - b. Heating
  - c. Cooling
  - d. Dry
  - e. Fan only

H. Electrical

1. The unit electrical power shall be 208-230/1/60 (V/Ph/Hz)
2. The unit shall be capable of operating within voltage limits of +/- 10% of the rated voltage.
3. Controller indicated on mechanical and electrical plans to be mounted near fan coil unit shall receive power from the fan coil unit.

I. Controls

1. Unit shall use controls provided by the manufacturer to perform all functions necessary to operate the system effectively and efficiently and communicate with the outdoor unit over an RS485 daisy chain.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS

A. General:

1. The air-conditioning system shall use R410A refrigerant.
2. Each system shall consist of one, two or three air source outdoor unit frame.
3. Dual and triple frame configurations shall be field piped together using manufacturer's designed and supplied Y-branch kit in conjunction with field provided interconnecting pipe to form a common refrigerant circuit.

4. Refrigerant circuit configuration for Heat Recovery System
    - a. The refrigerant circuit shall be constructed using field provided copper piped together with manufacturer supplied Heat Recovery unit(s) ,Y- branches or Header fittings, connected to (ducted, non-ducted or combination thereof) single/multiple indoor units to effectively and efficiently control the simultaneous heating and cooling operation of the VRF system.
    - b. Each refrigerant pipe, y-branch, header kit, elbows and isolation ball valves shall be individually insulated with no air gaps. All joints shall be glued and sealed.
  5. Factory installed microprocessor controls in the outdoor unit(s), HR unit(s), and indoor unit(s) shall perform functions to efficiently operate the VRF system and communicate in a daisy chain configuration between each other. Communications and cabling shall conform to RS485 standard.
  6. The system shall be designed to accept connection up to 58 indoor units depending on the outdoor unit model selected.
  7. The outdoor unit shall have a fusible plug.
  8. The fusible plug shall have a threaded connector.
  9. The unit shall be shipped from the factory fully assembled including internal refrigerant piping, compressor, contacts, relay(s), power and communications wiring necessary.
  10. Each refrigeration circuit shall have the following components:
    - a. Refrigerant strainer(s)
    - b. Check valve(s)
    - c. Oil separator
    - d. Accumulator
    - e. 4-way reversing valve
    - f. Vapor injection valve
    - g. Variable path valve
    - h. Oil balancing valve for Hi-POR (Available for 12 & 14 ton only)
    - i. Oil Level sensor
    - j. Electronic expansion valve(s)
    - k. Sub-cooler
    - l. High and low side Schrader valve service ports with caps.
    - m. Service Valves
- B. Unit Cabinet:
1. Outdoor unit cabinet shall be made of 20-gauge galvanized steel with an enamel finish.
  2. Outdoor unit cabinet finish shall be tested in accordance with ASTM B-117 salt spray test procedure specific for a marine environment application.
  3. The front panels of the outdoor units shall be removable type for access to internal components.
  4. A smaller service access panel, not larger than 6.25"x 6.67" and secured by a maximum of (2) screws shall be provided to access the following:
    - a. Service tool connection
    - b. DIP switches
    - c. Auto addressing
    - d. Error codes
  5. The cabinet shall have piping knockouts to allow refrigerant piping to be connected at the front or through the bottom of the unit.
- C. Fan:
1. Each 6-ton cabinet shall be equipped with one direct drive variable speed propeller fan with Brushless Digitally Controlled (BLDC) motor with a vertical air discharge.
  2. Each 8 to 14-ton cabinet shall be equipped with two direct drive variable speed propeller fan(s) with BLDC motor(s) with a vertical air discharge.

3. The fan(s) blades shall be made of Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS) material.
4. The fan(s) motor shall be equipped with permanently lubricated bearings.
5. The fan motor shall be variable speed with a maximum operating speed of 1050 RPM.
6. The fan shall have a raised guard to help prevent contact with moving parts.
7. The cabinet shall have option to change the discharge air direction from vertical to horizontal using optional factory provided air guides.
8. The cabinet shall have DIP switch setting to raise external static pressure up to 0.32 in-w.g.

D. Condenser Coil:

1. The outdoor unit shall have a factory built coil comprised of aluminum fins mechanically bonded on copper tubing.
2. The copper tubes shall have inner grooves.
3. The aluminum fins shall have factory applied corrosion resistant GoldFin™ material.
4. Hydrophilic Coil coating shall be tested in accordance with ASTM B-117 salt spray test procedure specific for a marine environment application.
5. The outdoor unit coil shall be tested to a pressure of 551 psig.
6. The coil for each cabinet shall have 14 Fins per Inch (FPI).
7. All the outdoor units shall have a 3 rows heat exchanger.
8. The cabinet shall have a coil guard.

E. Compressor:

1. Each 6, 8, 10-ton cabinet shall be equipped with one hermetically sealed, inverter driven, High Side Shell (HSS) scroll compressor.
2. The 12 and 14-ton cabinet shall be equipped with two hermetically sealed, inverter driven, HSS controlled scroll compressors.
3. Each inverter driven, HSS scroll compressor shall be capable of operating in a frequency range from 15 Hz to 150 Hz with control in 0.5 Hz increments.
4. The compressor(s) shall be equipped with a 60-Watt crankcase heater.
5. The compressor shall use a factory charge of Polyvinyl Ether (PVE) oil.
6. The compressor bearing(s) shall have Teflon™ coating.
7. The compressor(s) shall be protected with:
  - a. High Pressure switch
  - b. Over-current /under current protection
  - c. Phase failure
  - d. Phase reversal
8. Standard, non-inverter driven compressors shall not be permitted

F. Oil Management

1. The system shall have Hi-POR (High Pressure Oil Return) to ensure a consistent film of oil on all moving compressor parts at low speed. Oil is returned to compressor through a separate oil injection pipe.
  - a) Oil return system shall maintain high side pressure return to the compressor
2. The system shall be provided with a centrifugal oil separator designed to extract oil from the oil/refrigerant gas stream leaving the compressor and return the extracted oil to the compressor oil sump.
3. The system shall have an oil level sensor in the compressor to provide direct oil level sensing.
4. The system shall only initiate an oil return cycle if the oil level is too low.
5. Timed oil return operations or non-oil level sensing systems shall not be permitted.

G. Refrigerant Management

1. System shall have advanced refrigerant control functions that optimize operating efficiency at all ambient operating conditions. Advanced refrigerant control functions shall include:
2. Accumulator shall be equipped with controls that vary the amount of refrigerant charge being circulated based on operating mode.
3. Outdoor unit coil shall be equipped with controls that maximizes heat transfer. Controls shall vary the coil circuiting between parallel and series configurations and be able to change flow direction in response to multiple refrigerant monitoring parameters and operating conditions.
4. Compressors shall be equipped with an intermediary port that introduces additional refrigerant to the compression chamber based on multiple refrigerant system monitoring parameters. This feature increases heating capacity at low ambient conditions.
5. System shall have advanced refrigerant control functions that optimize operating efficiency at all ambient operating conditions. Advanced refrigerant control functions shall include:

H. Sound Levels

1. Each cabinet shall be rated with a sound level not to exceed 59.5 dB(A) when tested in an anechoic chamber under ISO3745 standard.

I. Sensors

1. Each single cabinet shall have
2. Suction temperature sensor
3. Discharge temperature sensor
4. High Pressure sensor
5. Low Pressure sensor
6. Outdoor temperature sensor
7. Outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature sensor

## 2.4 HEAT RECOVERY UNIT (HR) FOR HEAT RECOVERY SYSTEM

A. General

1. HR unit shall be designed and manufactured by the same manufacturer of VRF indoor unit(s) and outdoor unit(s).
2. HR unit casing shall be made with galvanized steel.
3. HR unit shall require 208-230V/1-phase/60Hz power supply.
4. HR Unit shall be an intermediate refrigerant control device between the air source outdoor unit and the indoor units to control the systems simultaneous cooling and heating operation.
5. HR unit shall be engineered to work with a three pipe VRF system comprising of
  - a. High Pressure Vapor Pipe
  - b. Low Pressure Vapor Pipe
  - c. Liquid Pipe
6. HR unit shall be designed to be piped in series or parallel.
7. Each port shall be capable of operating in cooling or heating independently regardless of the operating mode of any other port on the HR unit or in the system.
8. Each port shall be capable of connecting from 1 to 8 indoor units to a maximum nominal capacity of 54MBh.
9. Indoor units greater than 54MBh nominal capacity shall be twinned using a reverse Y-branch.
10. HR unit shall be internally piped, wired, assembled and run tested at the factory.
11. HR unit shall be designed for installation in an indoor environment.

12. HR unit shall have a liquid bypass valve.
13. HR unit shall have (2) two-position solenoid valves per port.
14. HR unit shall have a balancing valve to control the pressure between the high pressure and low-pressure pipe during mode switching.
15. HR unit shall have an electronic expansion valve for subcooling.
16. HR unit shall not require a condensate drain.
17. HR unit shall be internally insulated.
18. All field refrigerant lines between outdoor unit and HR unit and from HR unit to indoor unit shall be field insulated.
19. The HR unit shall not exceed a net weight of 49 lbs.
20. The system shall be designed to accommodate 16 HR units connected to Heat Recovery units piped in single series string.
21. A single series pipe string of 1 to 16 HR units shall be capable of serving indoor units with a total nominal capacity of 192 MBH per HR unit.

B. Piping Capabilities

1. The elevation difference between indoor units on heat pump systems shall be 131 feet.
2. The elevation differences for heat recovery systems shall be:
  - a. Heat recovery unit (HRU) to connected indoor unit shall be 49 feet
  - b. HRU to HRU shall be 49 feet
  - c. Indoor unit to indoor unit connected to same HRU shall be 49 feet
  - d. Indoor unit to indoor unit connected to separate parallel HRU's shall be 131 feet.
3. The acceptable elevation difference between two series connected HR units shall be 16 feet.

C. Controls

1. HR unit(s) shall have factory installed unit mounted control boards and integral microprocessor to communicate with other devices in the VRF system.
2. HR unit shall communicate with the air source unit via the air source/indoor unit 2-conductor shielded communications cable terminated using a daisy chain configuration.
3. The VRF manufacturer shall provide published documentation that specifically allows the installation of field provided isolation valves on all pipes connected to the Heat Recovery unit to allow the servicing of HR units refrigerant circuit or the replacement of HR unit without evacuating the balance of the piping system.

2.5 BACnet COMMUNICATION MANAGER (One per Building)

- A. Communication Manager shall provide multiple energy management schemes and integrate with third-party Building Automation Systems via BACnet, LON and Fox protocols. The Communication Manager shall be configurable via a standard web browser requiring no additional software and shall be capable of providing daily, weekly, yearly, and holiday programmable scheduling of Occupied/Unoccupied settings, On/Off, Mode of Operation, set point and fan speed based on the available functions of the connected system.
- B. Communication Manager shall communicate to the Multi V VRF indoor unit via the VRF RS-485 daisy chain communication protocol.
- C. Communication Manager shall have web browser graphical user interface access with user control.
- D. Communication Manager shall have operation, alarm, user and error history log with reporting and exporting capabilities

- E. Module shall require 24V power.

## 2.6 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. See Drawings and Schedules.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Provide unobstructed maintenance access to the filter, internal unit components and to the unit controller.
- D. Install floor-mounted, compressor-condenser components on concrete housekeeping pad with removable, cadmium-plated or #316 SS fasteners.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.
- G. Install condensate drain pumps in locations where gravity drainage is not feasible. Provide power supply to the pump from the fan coil unit it serves.
- H. Install secondary drain pans for the units mounted in the ceiling cavity.
- I. For all ducted fan coil units provide filter housing as follows:
  - 1. Side access or bottom access filter housing capable of accommodating Camfil Merv 13 filter model Durafil ES with initial resistance of 0.25" w.g. at 2000 cfm. The filter bank shall be mounted in Camfil manufactured side access filter housing with hinged access door, door and filter sealing gasket, preinsulated and latch and shall consist of the following filters:
    - a. Use (1) one 12x24x12 filter for all units scheduled on drawings to deliver under 900 cfm.
    - b. Use (2) two 12x24x12 or (1) one 24x24x12 filters for all units scheduled on drawings to deliver between 950 cfm and 1,500 cfm.
    - c. Use (2) two 24x24x12 filters for all units scheduled on drawings to deliver between 1,600 cfm and 3,000 cfm.

### 3.2 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and Division 25 of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from those in Division 27, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL Listed in approved raceway according to NEC and Division 26 requirements.
- C. Low voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. Sub-fuse low voltage power circuits as required to meet Class 2 current limits.
- D. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables not in raceway may be used provided that cables are UL Listed for the intended application.
- E. All wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms, or where subject to mechanical damage, shall be installed in raceway at levels below 11 feet.
- F. The VRF provider shall not install Class 2 wiring in raceway containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).
- G. The VRF provider shall not install wiring in raceway containing tubing.
- H. Where Class 2 wiring is exposed, wiring is to be run parallel along a surface or perpendicular to it and neatly tied at 8 foot intervals.
- I. Where plenum cables are used without raceway, they shall be supported from or anchored to structural members. Cables shall not be supported by or anchored to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.
- J. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. All wire to wire connections shall be at a terminal block.
- K. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- L. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 125 Volts. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- M. All wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- N. Install plenum wiring in sleeves where it passes through walls and floors. Maintain the fire rating at all penetrations.
- O. The size of raceway and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor, in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- P. Include one pull string in each raceway that is 1 inch in diameter or larger.



- Q. Use coded conductors throughout with conductors of different colors.
- R. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- S. Conceal all raceways, except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install raceway, to maintain a minimum clearance of 9 inches from high-temperature equipment such as steam pipes, electrical transformers or flues.
- T. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap, plumber tape or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to air distribution ductwork.
- U. Adhere to specification requirements where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
- V. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of all vertical raceways.
- W. The VRF provider shall terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and shall maintain updated as-built wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- X. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 2.5 feet in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than ½ inch electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller, pumps, chemical mixing and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- Y. Raceway must be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with coupling according to code. Terminations must be made with fittings at boxes and ends not terminating in boxes shall have protective bushings installed.

### 3.3 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. The VRF provider shall adhere to the items listed in the previous section on WIRING.
- B. The VRF provider shall install all cabling in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- C. The VRF provider shall not install communication wiring in raceway and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.
- D. When a cable enters or exits a building, the VRF provider shall install a lightning arrestor between the lines and ground. The lightning arrestor shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- E. The VRF provider shall install all runs of communication wiring with un-spliced lengths when that length is commercially available.
- F. The VRF provider shall provide a permanent tagged label on all communication wiring to indicate origination and destination data.
- G. The VRF provider shall ground coaxial cable in accordance with NEC regulations on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."

- H. When shielded wiring is use, the VRF provider shall ground the shield only once for each continuous segment of cable. The grounding location shall be at the end of the segment that is most readily accessible.

### 3.4 SENSORS

- A. The VRF provider shall install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. The VRF provider shall mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which the sensor operates.
- C. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by the wall framing.
- D. All wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor readings.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. The test report shall be submitted for review and approval to EOR.

### 3.7 VRF CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT, TESTING AND TRAINING

- A. The VRF provider shall furnish all labor and test apparatus required to execute the start up testing and owners commissioning plan. Key tasks to be executed and documented in the start-up testing and commissioning verification report include:
1. Verification of all primary and secondary voltages.
  2. Verification that power wiring for all devices conforms to manufacturer's instructions.
  3. Verification that all labeling is in place.
  4. Verification and Inspection of wiring for loose strands and tight connections.
  5. Verification and Inspection of all control panel electrical grounding
  6. Verification of field bus topology, grounding of shields (if used) and installation of termination devices.
  7. Verification that each I/O device is landed per the submittals and functions per the sequence of control.
    - a. Analog sensors shall be properly scaled and a value reported to the OWS.
    - b. Binary sensors shall have the specified normal position and the state is reported to the OWS.
    - c. Analog outputs have the specified normal position and move full stroke when so commanded.
    - d. Binary outputs have the specified normal state and respond to energize / de-energize commands.
  8. Analog sensors have been calibrated with high quality instrumentation suitable for the sensor being calibrated.
    - a. The instruments shall display a current (12 month) NIST traceable calibration sticker. Associated instrument calibration certificates shall be made available within 24 hours of a request.
    - b. The measured value, reported value, and the calculated offset that was entered into the database shall be recorded.
    - c. The calibration criteria shall be:
      - 1) Space Temperature: +/- 0.4 degrees F
      - 2) Air Temperature: +/- 0.5 degrees F
      - 3) Differential Pressure: +/- 3 %
      - 4) Gauge Pressure: +/- 5%
      - 5) CO<sub>2</sub>: +/- 2 %

### 3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

## SECTION 26 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
  - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 3. Fire Rated Sleeves for cables.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Common electrical installation requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- B. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- C. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For Fire Rated Sleeves for cables.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Location of electrical outlets and equipment:
  - 1. Location of electrical outlets and equipment shown on electrical drawings are diagrammatic. Unless indicated otherwise do not use electrical drawings to locate electrical outlets and equipment.
- B. Electrical connections to equipment supplied by other trades:
  - 1. Prior to procurement of electrical equipment and field work coordinate with shop drawings and/or manufacturer's installation instructions the actual electrical characteristics of the equipment to be connected.
  - 2. Notify engineer of significant deviations or conflicts between the shop drawings and/or the manufacturer's installation instructions and information in the contract documents.

- C. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
  - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
  - 2. To provide for ease of disconnected the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
  - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope so connected raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- D. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

#### 1.6 PERMITS AND FEES

- A. Pay all charges and/or fees levied by the serving utility companies relative to this project.
- B. Obtain and pay all fees for permits, licensing, and inspections applicable to work of Division 26, 27 and 28

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Install work and materials to conform with local, State and Federal codes, and other applicable laws and regulations.
- B. Drawings are intended to be diagrammatic and reflect the Basis of Design manufacturer's equipment. Drawings are not intended to show every item in its exact location, or details of equipment or proposed systems layout. Verify actual dimensions of systems and equipment proposed to assure that systems and equipment will fit in available space. Contractor is responsible for design and construction costs incurred for equipment other than Basis of Design, including, but not limited to, architectural, structural, electrical, HVAC, fire sprinkler, and plumbing systems.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Follow manufacturer's written instructions. If in conflict with Contract Documents, obtain clarification. Notify Engineer/Architect, in writing, before starting work.
- D. Items shown on Drawings are not necessarily included in Specifications or vice versa. Confirm requirements in all Contract Documents. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Provide Qualified Personnel that are thoroughly knowledgeable of applicable codes related to electrical systems to perform the electrical work. Installations shall be performed by skilled electrical tradesmen fully aware of the latest techniques, practices, and standards of the industry. Refer to C.E.C. Article 100-Definitions, Qualified Person.
- F. Install electrical equipment and components in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with recognized practices and industry standards. Refer to C.E.C.110-12. Haphazard or poor installation practice will be cause for rejection of the work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water stop, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.
- C. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.

### 2.2 FIRE RATED SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. 3M
  - 2. Hilti
  - 3. Specified Technologies, Inc (STI)
  - 4. Wiremold.
- B. Factory assembled rectangular steel pathway containing an intumescent insert material that adjusts automatically to cable addition or subtraction.
- C. Sleeve shall have an F Rating equal to or greater than the rating of the wall in which the sleeve is installed.
- D. Sleeve shall be UL listed and bear the UL Classification marking.
- E. Sleeve shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E814 (ANSI/UL1479).
- F. Provide square wall plate kits for single sleeve applications. Provide multi-gang wall/floor plate kits for ganged applications.
- G. Subject to compatibility with requirements and field conditions, i.e. sleeve size, wall thickness, etc., acceptable products include the following:
  - 1. 3M Fire Barrier Pass-Through Devices
  - 2. Hilti Speed Sleeves
  - 3. Specified Technologies Inc. EZ-Path Fire Rated Pathway (series 33).
  - 4. Wiremold Flamestopper FS4 Series

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- D. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- E. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnected with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- F. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete, masonry and gypsum board walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Sleeves are required where cables (not in raceway) penetrate walls or floors. Sleeves are not required where raceways penetrate walls, except where raceways penetrate exterior walls/foundations below grade.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Provide insulated bushings on EMT sleeves for cable not in conduit. Bushings shall be plenum rated where installed in a plenum.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 4 inches above finished floor level unless noted otherwise.

- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Fire Rated Sleeves for cables: Fabricate openings in wall or floor assemblies per manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.3 SLEEVE APPLICATION

- A. Sleeves for cables not in conduit:
  - 1. Through Non-Rated Interior Walls: EMT sleeves.
  - 2. Through Non-Rated Floors: EMT sleeves.
  - 3. Through Fire Rated Interior Walls: Fire Rated Sleeves for cables.
  - 4. Through Fire Rated Floors: Fire Rated Sleeves for cables.
- B. Sleeves for conduits:
  - 1. Through Exterior Walls Below Grade: Refer to details on structural Drawings. Absent any such details provide cast iron pipe or PVC, Schedule 40 or 80, sleeve two trade sizes larger than the conduit.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260500



## SECTION 26 05 19 – LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
- 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for allowable applications of raceways and cable assemblies. Cable assemblies, such as Type MC cable, shall not be permitted unless noted otherwise.
- 2. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for conductor color coding.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with CEC.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BUILDING WIRE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Alan Wire Company
  - 2. Cerro Wire
  - 3. CME Wire and Cable

4. Encore Wire Corporation
5. General Cable.
6. Houston Wire & Cable Company.
7. Southwire Company.

B. Copper Building Wire

1. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
2. Conductors: complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

E. Temperature Ratings: All conductors shall be rated 90-degree C minimum.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. 3M Electrical Products
2. AFC Cable Systems, a part of Atkore International
3. Appleton, a brand of Emerson
4. Gardner Bender
5. Hubbell Power Systems
6. Ideal Industries, Inc
7. Ilsco
8. Neer, a brand of Emerson
9. NSI Industries
10. O-Z Gedney, a brand of Emerson
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Lugs for attachment to telecommunications systems grounding busbars shall be two-hole with long barrels and irreversible crimp terminations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Feeders to Distribution Equipment and Panelboards: Type XHHW-2 or type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exterior Feeders and branch circuits routed horizontally on roofs: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Other Feeders and Branch Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

### 3.3 CONDUCTOR SIZES

- A. Minimum Wire Size (Interior Work): No. 12 AWG, except No. 14 AWG shall be permitted for signal, pilot control circuits and fixture whips.
- B. Minimum Wire Size (Exterior Work): No 10 AWG.
- C. Use #10 AWG minimum conductor size in lieu of #12 AWG minimum for 20 ampere, 120 volt branch circuits where homeruns are longer than 75 feet and for 20 ampere, 277 volt branch circuits where homeruns are longer than 175 feet. Increase in size as required for a maximum of 3 percent voltage drop from panel to load.
- D. Derate conductors based on quantity of current carrying conductors in each conduit. Refer to the CEC 110.13(B)(3)(a) for derating factors.
- E. Derate conductors for high ambient temperatures. Refer to the CEC 110.13(B)(2)(b) for derating factors.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Branch circuits serving receptacles and lighting loads shall have dedicated neutral conductors and shall not share a common neutral conductor. The use of handle ties across single pole circuit breakers to allow the use of a common neutral is not acceptable.
- H. Multiwire Branch Circuits and Shared Neutrals:
  - 1. Multiwire branch circuits (as defined by the CEC) and shared neutrals (common grounded conductors) are not permitted, except as follows:
    - a. Wherever a multiwire branch circuit is specifically indicated on the Drawings and a multi-pole breaker is provided in the panel from which it originates as a means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors.
  - 2. Derating factors shall be applied, per CEC Article 310, to multiple current-carrying conductors installed within the same conduit. Neutral conductors shall be regarded as current-carrying conductors. Wire sizes shall be increased as needed to maintain the ampacity that corresponds to the overcurrent protection device rating.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unsliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepared test reports.
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
  3. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
    - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  4. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
  2. Results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
  - 1. Underground distribution grounding.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified on drawings, include the following:
    - a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells based on CEC.
      - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
      - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

### 2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- G. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- H. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- I. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- J. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.

- K. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 6 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with more than one continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by CEC:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Receptacle circuits.
  - 3. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 4. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 6. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations.



- C. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- D. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative].
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  - 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
  3. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
  4. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

## SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
  - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
  - b. Clamps.
  - c. Hangers.
  - d. Sockets.
  - e. Eye nuts.
  - f. Fasteners.
  - g. Anchors.
  - h. Saddles.
  - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.

2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Projectors.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M – Structural Welding Code - Steel.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the supported equipment and systems will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

### 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
    - c. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
    - d. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - e. Flex-Strut Inc.
    - f. G-Strut.
    - g. Gripple Inc.
    - h. Haydon Corporation.
    - i. MIRO Industries.
    - j. Metal Ties Innovation.
    - k. Rocket Rack; Robroy Industries.
    - l. Unistrut; Atkore International.
    - m. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Hilti, Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
      - 2) Empire Industries, Inc.
      - 3) Hilti, Inc.
      - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
  - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
  - 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### 2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  - 1. NECA 1.
  - 2. NECA 101
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in CECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in CEC. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.
- G. Damp or wet locations: Utilize hot dipped galvanized steel slotted support systems. Apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780 on cut edges.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with CECA 1 and CECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in CECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to CEC.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.

2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
  7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 4500-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
  1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" Insert painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.



- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

## SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
- 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
- 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 4. Surface raceways.
- 5. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
- 2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.
- 3. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Power Conductors and Cables" for cable assemblies such as metal clad cable. See part 3 in section 260513 for application for metal clad cable.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- D. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
1. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
  3. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
  4. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
  5. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
  6. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings:
1. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
  4. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: die cast.
    - b. Type: compression.
  5. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in CEC, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

### 2.2 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to CEC.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- C. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.3 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. MonoSystems, Inc.
    - b. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
    - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
  - 2. Single Channel for Power locations: One-piece raceway with matching device boxes, fittings and all components necessary for a complete raceway system.
    - a. Design Basis: Wiremold 500 or 700 series or equivalent to meet fill requirements.
    - b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel.
    - b. Color: Light almond.

## 2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Steel Surface-Mount Boxes for Finished Spaces (only where specified): NEMA OS 1, cast bell-box style, no visible knockouts, no holes, no gaps, no sharp edges, smooth, size to match flush faceplate dimensions.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hubbell
    - b. ABB
    - c. Legrand/Wiremold
    - d. Steel City
    - e. FSR
  - 2. Material: Cast metal.
  - 3. Type: Fully adjustable.
  - 4. Shape: Rectangular.
  - 5. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 6. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- I. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- J. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 1 for indoor dry locations and Type 4 for wet and outdoor locations with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- L. Cabinets:
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
  - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Co.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- C. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM (Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber) or NBR (Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Plastic or carbon steel or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.

3. ConCEcting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.
- D. Grout: Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, non-staining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Above Grade Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
    - a. Under footprint of building: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, concrete encased or as indicated on the drawings.
    - b. Outside of the building footprint: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC concrete encased.
  3. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
    - a. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - b. Mechanical rooms.
    - c. Gymnasiums.
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
  7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size:

1. Indoor areas: 1/2-inch trade size minimum
  2. Buried, below or in concrete slab: 1-inch trade size minimum
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. EMT: Use compression, cast-metal fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  3. Use fittings as follows:
    - a. Outdoor and wet/damp areas: compression
    - b. Conduits larger than 1-inch trade size: compression
    - c. Conduits 1-inch and smaller trade size: compression
  4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with CEC limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- D. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- E. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- F. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- H. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to CEC minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines. The following are exceptions for concealing conduits:
  1. Where specifically noted or indicated on the drawings
  2. Electrical rooms with surface mounted panels
  3. Mechanical rooms
  4. In open ceilings with exposed structure
  5. In finished spaces only where specifically identified on the drawings provide surface metal raceway and surface-mount style boxes are painted to match the surrounding

- finishes. Coordinate work directly with contractor responsible ceiling, walls, and partition finishes.
6. Existing spaces as allowed below:
    - a. Existing concrete or block walls
  - J. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
  - K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
    1. Conduit embedded in concrete slabs shall be positioned within the middle third of the slab and secured with approved supports. In no case shall the outside dimension of the conduit exceed  $\frac{1}{3}$  the thickness of the slab. Conduits in slabs shall not be placed any closer than 3 conduit diameters on-center, and they shall not cross over each other.
    2. Secure raceways to reinforcing rods to prevent sagging or shifting during concrete placement. Space raceways laterally to prevent voids in concrete.
    3. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
    4. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
    5. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
    6. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
    7. Change from ENC to GRC before rising above floor.
  - L. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
    1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
    2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
  - M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
  - N. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
  - O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
  - P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn more.
  - Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
  - R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.



- S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- T. Surface Raceways:
  - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
  - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces, or from conditioned spaces to non-conditioned spaces or to exterior structures.
  - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  - 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
  - 6. Where otherwise required by CEC.
- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
  - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
- X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

- Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- FF. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- GG. Existing Building Surfaces: In finished rooms where an existing wall or ceiling remains in place, cut and patch to match the surrounding finishes as required to conceal all raceways. Coordinate work directly with contractor responsible ceiling, walls, and partition finishes.
- HH. Conceal raceways within existing finished ceilings, walls, and partitions, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or as follows:
  - 1. Existing Hollow Walls (such as stud walls, hollow masonry walls, or other wall types with internal voids or vertical cavities):
    - a. Outlet Boxes: If possible, use existing openings in wall, provided the opening is positioned within 24-inches of the location shown on plan for the new outlet. Otherwise, cut and patch wall as needed to install box flush.
    - b. Conduit: If possible, fish FMC (or MC cabling where permitted) down within the existing wall cavity. Otherwise, saw-cut and patch wall as needed to conceal conduit within the wall. Finish wall to match original.
    - c. This Contractor shall visit the facility to review existing conditions and determine means and methods of installation prior to bidding.
    - d. Where specifically identified on the drawings, use surface-mounted boxes and surface metal raceway or surface-mounted conduit painted to match the surrounding finishes.
  - 2. Existing Solid Walls (such as precast panels or filled masonry walls):
    - a. Use surface-mounted boxes and surface metal raceway or surface-mounted conduit painted to match the surrounding finishes.
  - 3. Existing Floors: Cut and patch existing floors as needed to accommodate new installations. Coordinate all such work with the general contractor prior to bidding.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUIT BENEATH EXPOSED ROOF DECKING

- A. Where raceways are routed beneath roof decking that is visible from below in finished spaces, install either GRC or IMC conduit tucked-in tight within the flute of the corrugated steel decking. Avoid running conduit perpendicular to flutes by routing it across from adjacent rooms if necessary. Run conduit in a fashion that renders it as inconspicuous as possible.
- B. Coordinate the placement of exposed conduits and junction boxes directly with the owner's jobsite representative prior to installation.
- C. No raceways shall be routed on the topside of roof decking.
- D. No EMT shall be routed within two inches below the underside of any roof decking.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CONDUIT IN EXTERIOR MASONRY WALLS

- A. Run conduit vertically in non-grout-filled masonry cells where possible. This should be the first choice in locating conduits in exterior walls. Total conduit bends from a technology outlet (including stub-out above ceiling) shall be limited to 180-degrees or less.
- B. In rooms where masonry between windows is filled/grouted solid, conduit may be run vertically in first grouted cell adjacent to window opening (first cell should not have rebar in it). Any conduit that needs to run vertically above the masonry opening will be passing through masonry lintel above. At locations where a steel beam frames the masonry opening, a different conduit location should be selected as this will block any vertical routing of conduit in the first cell location.
- C. Avoid any conduit runs in masonry cells with rebar. If this is not possible in some locations due to the number of windows and non-grouted wall space provided, the architect/engineer will need to review this on a case-by-case basis. Data and power outlets may be shifted slightly, provided they are shifted together and not more than 24-inches, unless specifically coordinated with and approved by the architect/engineer.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

## SECTION 26 05 48.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Restraints - rigid type.
2. Restraints - cable type.
3. Restraint accessories.
4. Post-installed concrete anchors.
5. Concrete inserts.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
2. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- ##### A. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California owned and regulated medical facilities).

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

##### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and provide notice at least seven days in advance.
2. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load capacity for each seismic- and wind-load-restraint device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic- and wind-load-restraint component used.
3. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

##### B. Delegated Design Submittal, signed and sealed by qualified structural professional engineer, for Each Seismic-Restraint Device:

1. For each seismic-restraint device, including restraint - rigid and cable type, restraint accessory, and concrete anchor and insert that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
    - a. Seismic Restraints: Select seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
    - b. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
    - c. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit input data and loading calculations prepared under Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical."
  - C. Delegated Design Submittal: Signed and sealed by qualified structural professional engineer, for each wind-load protection device.
    1. For each wind-load protection device, including restraint - rigid and cable type, restraint accessory, and concrete anchor and insert that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
      - a. Wind-Load Restraint: Select wind-load restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
      - b. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for reinforcement use.
      - c. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical."
    2. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Detail Drawings prepared by qualified structural professional engineer:
      - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind-load restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
      - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
      - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint details with wind-load details required for equipment mounted outdoors.
    3. Product Listing, Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic and wind-load bracing for components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
  - B. Welding certificates.
  - C. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified structural professional engineer to design seismic and wind-load control system in accordance with criteria specified details with OPM number.
- B. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic and wind-load **restraints** for suspended components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted components so that failure of a non-essential or essential component does not cause failure of any other essential building component.
- D. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested and labeled by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
- E. Component Supports:
  - 1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of an NRTL.

### 2.2 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - 4. Hilti, Inc.
  - 5. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - 6. TOLCO Incorporated.
  - 7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  - 8. VMC GROUP.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of ANSI/AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

### 2.3 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.

2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
3. Gripple Inc.
4. Loos & Co. Inc.
5. VMC GROUP.

- B. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Cables: ASTM A492 stainless steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- C. Restraint cable assembly and cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. Cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.4 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  3. Hilti, Inc.
  4. Loos & Co. Inc.
  5. Mason Industries, Inc.
  6. TOLCO Incorporated.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.5 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

- A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.



- c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Powers Fasteners.
  - e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
2. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Powers Fasteners.
    - e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
    - f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  2. Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.
- C. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic and wind-load applications.
1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
  2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.
- D. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp that is not vibration isolated.
1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## 2.6 CONCRETE INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Hilti, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  4. Powers Fasteners.
  5. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  6. Unistrut; Atkore International.

- B. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
- C. Comply with MSS SP-58.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic and wind-load control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry static, wind-load, and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SEISMIC-RESTRAINT AND WIND-LOAD CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic and Wind-Load Controls Schedule, where indicated on Drawings, where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
  - 1. Install equipment and devices to withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events.
- B. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Installation of seismic and wind-load restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or conduits.
- D. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.

2. Install seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- E. Raceway, Cable, Wireway, Cable Tray, and Busway Support and Hanger Restraints:
1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  2. Install seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- F. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- G. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- H. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- I. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- J. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors must be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
  6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.
- 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION
- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.
- B. tion is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Test no fewer than four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 3. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- C. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260548.16

## SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces Insert temperature change.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
1. Black letters on white field.
  2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
  2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
    - d. Neutral: White
  3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Neutral: White
  4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.
    - d. Neutral: Gray
  5. Color for Neutral: White.
  6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
  7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
- E. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Black letters on white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
  - d. HellermannTyton.
  - e. LEM Products Inc.
  - f. Marking Services Inc.
  - g. Panduit Corp.
  - h. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  - i. emedco.
  
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Hellermann Tyton.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
    - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. A'n D Cable Products.
    - b. Brady Corporation.
    - c. Brother International Corporation.
    - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - e. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - f. LEM Products Inc.
    - g. Marking Services Inc.
    - h. Panduit Corp.
    - i. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - j. emedco.
  
  2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
  
  3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  
  4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. A'n D Cable Products.
    - b. Brady Corporation.
    - c. Brother International Corporation.
    - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - e. HellermannTyton.
    - f. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - g. LEM Products Inc.
    - h. Marking Services Inc.
    - i. Panduit Corp.
    - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - k. emedco.
  2. Minimum Nominal Size:
    - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
    - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
    - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. HellermannTyton.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Panduit Corp.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. HellermannTyton.
  - d. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  - e. Marking Services Inc.
  - f. Panduit Corp.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. emedco.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. HellermannTyton.
    - b. LEM Products Inc.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch-wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - c. LEM Products Inc.

- d. Marking Services Inc.
  - e. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - f. Reef Industries, Inc.
  - g. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Tape:
    - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
  3. Color and Printing:
    - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
  4. Tag:
    - a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Width: 3 inches.
    - c. Thickness: 4 mils.
    - d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft..
    - e. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 30 lbf and 2500 psi.
  5. Tag:
    - a. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Width: 3 inches.
    - c. Thickness: 12 mils.
    - d. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft..
    - e. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 400 lbf and 11,500 psi.
  6. Tag:
    - a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Width: 3 inches.
    - c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.
    - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
    - e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft..
    - f. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 70 lbf and 4600 psi.
  7. Tag:
    - a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows

inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.

- b. Width: 3 inches.
  - c. Overall Thickness: 8 mils.
  - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
  - e. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft..
  - f. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 300 lbf and 12,500 psi.
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

## 2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Brady Corporation.
- b. Carlton Industries, LP.
- c. Marking Services Inc.
- d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- e. emedco.

- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Brady Corporation.
- b. Carlton Industries, LP.
- c. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
- d. LEM Products Inc.
- e. Marking Services Inc.
- f. Panduit Corp.
- g. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- h. emedco.

- C. Write-on Tags:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Carlton Industries, LP.
- b. LEM Products Inc.
- c. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
- d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.7 SIGNS

### A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. emedco.
2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

### B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. emedco.
2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

### C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  - e. emedco.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:

- a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
- b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
- c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
- d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
- e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. HellermannTyton.
  2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  3. Marking Services Inc.
  4. Panduit Corp.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D638: 7000 psi.
  3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
  5. Color: Black.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- I. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- J. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "POWER."
- K. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- L. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

- M. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- O. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- S. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- T. Underground Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
  - 2. Use detectable underground warning tape at duct banks that have two or more conduits
  - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- U. Metal Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using plenum-rated cable ties.
- V. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using plenum-rated cable ties.
- W. Write-on Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using plenum-rated cable ties.
- X. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.

Y. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels or.
  1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
  2. Apply the following identification colors:
    - a. 480Y/277 Volt Distribution System: Orange.
    - b. 208Y/120 Volt, Distribution System: White.
    - c. Fire Alarm System: Red.
    - d. Motor and Other Control Systems: Black.
    - e. Clock, Sound, Intercom, Data: Blue.
    - f. Ground: Green.
- D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  1. "POWER."



- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use snap-around labels to identify the phase.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Marker tape or Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  - 2. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  - 3. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 4. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
  - 5. Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands or snap-around color-coding bands:
    - a. Fire Alarm System: Red.
- J. Grounding Electrode Conductors and Grounding System Conductors: At each electrical room and communications room ground bus bar, label each raceway or conductor at the ground bus bar. Identify the destination of each grounding electrode conductor, bonding jumper and grounding system conductor. The labeling shall be by permanent adhesive label on the raceway. Conductors that terminate in the same room and the entire path is readily visible do not require labeling.
- K. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- L. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
  - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
  - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
  - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- M. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with

NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

- N. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- O. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs.
  - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power-transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- P. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- Q. Operating Instruction Signs: Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs.
- R. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Indoor Equipment: Metal-backed butyrate signs.
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Switchgear.
    - e. Switchboards.
    - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - g. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    - h. Enclosed switches.
    - i. Enclosed controllers.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
  - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.

7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards Submit final version to match installed conditions and additional loads

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
  2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
  3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or ISO 9002 certified.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. CHANGE THE BELOW FOR THE PROJECT LOCATION FOR EXAMPLE LOCATIONS IN ARIZONA SHOULD HAVE AMBIENT TEMPERATURE UP TO 50 DEGREES C IF LOCATED OUTDOORS. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

### B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. **Manufacturer's Warranty:** Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. **Special Warranty:** Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. ESL Power Systems, Inc.
  3. Eaton.
  4. Mersen USA.
  5. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  6. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- F. Comply with CEC.
- G. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 7. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel Same finish as panels and trim.
- H. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- I. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
  - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
  - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  - 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- J. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.

3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- K. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- L. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 10 percent of poles unless indicated otherwise on drawings.
  2. Future spaces: number as indicated in panelboard schedules on the drawings.
- M. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.
1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
  2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.
- N. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

## 2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. ESL Power Systems, Inc.
  3. Eaton.
  4. Mersen USA.
  5. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  6. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker as indicated on plans.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: or Plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Eaton.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents. **Circuit breaker types, frame sizes, and functionality shall be as required to meet the overcurrent device selectivity requirements as noted in 26 05 70 Coordination Study, but not less than as noted below:**
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  3. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  4. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
  5. MCCB Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.



- d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
- e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
- f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
- g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
- h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
- i. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
- j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
- k. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- l. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
- m. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
- n. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in CEC.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install floor panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- M. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- N. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- O. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Do not perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment:
      - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
  - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
  - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
  - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 26 27 26 – WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 3. Twist-locking receptacles.
  - 4. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - 5. Cord and plug sets.
  - 6. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
  - 7. Occupancy sensors.
  - 8. Wall plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.
- J. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
  - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
  - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  - 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
  - 4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

### 2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Straight Blade Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).
  - b. Hubbell; HBL5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).
  - c. Leviton; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

### 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper: SGF20
  - b. Hubbell: GFRST20\_ST (AutoGuard™)
  - c. Leviton: G5362
  - d. Pass & Seymour: 2095
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Non-feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

### 2.4 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 15 A

1. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
3. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

### 2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

#### A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper: CSB120
  - b. Hubbell: CSB120
  - c. Leviton: 1221-2
  - d. Pass & Seymour: CSB20AC1
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

### 2.6 WALL PLATES

#### A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

#### B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch-thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.

4. Material for Indoor Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, thermoplastic with lockable in-use cover.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pig tailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
  5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
  6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.



7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
    - a. In existing buildings, match the configuration of existing devices.
- F. Wet locations: Provide weatherproof cover plates at exterior and interior wet locations as required by the current adopted CEC whether indicated as such on the drawings or not, in addition to those devices that are specifically denoted on the drawings with a "W" or "WP" to receive weatherproof covers
- G. Maintenance Receptacles for HVAC equipment: whether denoted on the drawing or not, provide accessible 125V, 20A, duplex GFCI receptacle located within 25 feet of HVAC equipment per current adopted CEC. Connect to 20 amp general purpose circuit
- H. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- I. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
  3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.

Coordinate both paragraphs below with Drawings.

- J. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- K. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles devices to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.
- B. Provide GFCI receptacles or GFCI breaker as required by CEC 210.8 at the following locations whether denoted on the drawings or not:
1. Within 6-feet of the outside edge of a sink or other "wet location" applications unless exception is applicable by the most current adopted CEC.
  2. Restrooms, locker rooms, and bathing/showering areas
  3. food service preparation areas and/or kitchen areas
  4. Outdoors, including mechanical rooftop units unless exception is applicable by the most current adopted CEC.

5. Garages and maintenance areas where electrical portable tools are used.
6. Electric water coolers
7. Vending machines
8. Other locations as required by the current adopted edition of the CEC

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  2. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Receptacles:
  1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  3. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  4. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

## SECTION 26 28 13 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
  - a. Control circuits.
  - b. Panelboards.
  - c. Switchboards.
  - d. Enclosed controllers.
  - e. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in PDF format.
  5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
  6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in PDF format.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Bussmann by Eaton
  2. Littelfuse
  3. Mersen
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  2. Type RK-5: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 Kaic, fast acting.
  4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
  5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

### 2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
  - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
  - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 2. Power Electronics Circuits: Class T, fast acting.
  - 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.
  - 4. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
  - 5. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Owner.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 26 28 16 – ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Motor-rated toggle switches.
  - 3. Enclosures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed disconnect switch, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosed disconnect switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed disconnect switches to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

B. Field quality control test and inspection reports.

C. Warranty documents.

D. Documentation of extra maintenance materials as specified—confirmed and signed by the Owner's representative.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Refer to Section 262813 "Fuses" for extra materials related to this section
2. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
3. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.



1. Warranty Period: Greater than one (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.
  - a. If the manufacturer's warranty commences upon the date materials are delivered, then the manufacturer's warranty period must be at least two (2) years to meet the requirement stated above.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed disconnect switches, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed disconnect switches, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with maximum dimensions, if indicated, and required workspace clearances and actual space available at mounting location.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with CEC.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

### 2.4 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  1. Single Throw: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks and interlocked with cover in closed position.

- B. Voltage Rating, Ampere Rating, and Quantity of Poles: Refer to the Drawings.
- C. Fuse Type, Rating, and Quantities: Refer to the Drawings.
- D. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors. Provide for each application in which the feeder contains a grounded conductor (neutral wire).
  - 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
  - 5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

## 2.5 MOTOR-RATED TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Motor-Starting Switches (without motor overload protection): "Quick-make, quick-break" heavy-duty toggle; non-fusible.
  - 1. Lockable in the off position.
  - 2. Factory markings indicating whether unit is off or on.
  - 3. Ratings: 600-V ac, 30-A.
  - 4. Quantity of Poles: As required or as indicated on the Drawings.
  - 5. Surface-mounted in unfinished spaces.
  - 6. Flush-mounted with stainless steel faceplate in finished spaces.
  - 7. Red Pilot light: To be included if indicated on the Drawings.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Environmental Rating Applications:
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R, galvanized steel.
  - 3. Indoor Wet or Damp Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel.
- C. Enclosure Finish:
  - 1. Type 1, Steel: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel.
  - 2. Types 1, 3R, 12, Galvanized Steel: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel.
- D. Operating Mechanism:
  - 1. NEMA 250 Type 1: The operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover.

2. NEMA 250 Type 3R: The operating handle shall be directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure.
3. NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the disconnect is in the closed position (ON) and to prevent closing the circuit (ON) when the enclosure cover is open.
4. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed disconnect switches for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of disconnect switches, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted disconnect switches with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with CEC and NECA 1.

#### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Perform Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
        - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
    - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
    - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

Resistance measurement tests are not included under subparagraph below because they are included under "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" Subparagraph above.

#### 2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage

in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.

- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Disconnect switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

## SECTION 32 12 16 - ASPHALT PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cold milling of existing asphalt pavement.
- 2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of existing asphalt pavement.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- 2. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
- 3. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each paving material.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each paving material, by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer shall be registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of the state in which Project is located.
- B. Standard Specifications: Comply with the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction (SSPWC) and the California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), latest editions and supplements for asphalt paving work. These Specifications apply only to performance and

materials and how they are to be incorporated into the Work. The legal/contractual relationship sections and the measurement and payment sections do not apply to this document.

- C. Asphalt-Paving Publication: Comply with AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements," unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).
  2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).
  3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
  4. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.
  5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C) at time of placement.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse and fine aggregate shall conform to SSPWC section 203-6.2.2. Mineral filler, if required, shall conform to SSPWC section 203-6.2.4.

### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: Paving asphalt, viscosity grade PG 64-10 conforming to Section 92 of the Caltrans Standard Specifications.
- B. Tack Coat: PG 64-10 conforming to Section 92 of the Caltrans Standard Specifications.
- C. Mixes: Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mix III-C3 PG 64-10 designed in conformance with SSPWC Section 203-6.5.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141/D 3141M; pumping consistency.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA, and not classified as "restricted use" for locations and conditions of application. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - 2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
  - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  - 1. Mill to a depth of 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.3 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseal concrete pieces firmly.
- C. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- D. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- E. Placing Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.



### 3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.
- B. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
  - 1. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.
- C. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
- D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.5 PLACING HOT-MIX ASPHALT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
  - 1. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
  - 2. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.6 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
  - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  - 1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.

- D. Finish Rolling. Finish rolls paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened
- F. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus, or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (no minus).
- B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch
  - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- B. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- C. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

## SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Walks and Equipment Pads

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

- D. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Portland Cement concrete paving shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant and shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-302 and 11B-403.

### 2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet (30.5 m) or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

### 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

### 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II, low alkali. Supplement with the following:
    - a. Pozzolan: ASTM C618, Class F or N Fly Ash, 100 pounds maximum per cubic yard, containing one percent or less carbon. Fly ash shall not be used in excess of 15 percent by weight of total cement quantity.
- B. Combined Aggregates: Gradation "C" conforming to SSPWC Section 201-1.3.2.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.

### 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- D. Liquid Curing Compound: ASTM C309, fugitive dye dissipating type, complying with Rule II 13 of the South Coast Air Quality Management District and Federal Air Quality Regulation 40 CFR 52.254.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber in preformed strips.
- B. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
  - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
  - 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures, and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3000 psi (20.7 MPa)
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.50.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
- C. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

#### 3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

#### 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bars supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
- F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
- G. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
  - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
  - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
  - 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 24 feet unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  - 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
    - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
  3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed.
- B. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- C. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- D. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- E. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

### 3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared, and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.



1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
  3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
- C. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on pavement surface according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
  2. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.

### 3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb./sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing or a combination of these methods.

### 3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches (13 mm per 300 mm) of tie bar.
  5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
  6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm) of dowel.
  8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
  9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
  10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with Portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13